

# Algebraic Numbers in Isabelle/HOL\*

René Thiemann, Akihisa Yamada, and Sebastiaan Joosten

December 14, 2021

## Abstract

Based on existing libraries for matrices, factorization of integer polynomials, and Sturm’s theorem, we formalized algebraic numbers in Isabelle/HOL. Our development serves as an implementation for real and complex numbers, and it admits to compute roots and completely factorize real and complex polynomials, provided that all coefficients are rational numbers. Moreover, we provide two implementations to display algebraic numbers, an injective one that reveals the representing polynomial, or an approximative one that only displays a fixed amount of digits.

To this end, we mechanized several results on resultants.

## Contents

<b>1</b>	<b>Introduction</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>2</b>	<b>Auxiliary Algorithms</b>	<b>5</b>
<b>3</b>	<b>Algebraic Numbers – Excluding Addition and Multiplication</b>	<b>5</b>
3.1	Polynomial Evaluation of Integer and Rational Polynomials in Fields. . . . .	6
3.2	Algebraic Numbers – Definition, Inverse, and Roots . . . . .	7
<b>4</b>	<b>Resultants</b>	<b>17</b>
4.1	Bivariate Polynomials . . . . .	17
4.1.1	Evaluation of Bivariate Polynomials . . . . .	17
4.1.2	Swapping the Order of Variables . . . . .	19
4.2	Resultant . . . . .	22
4.2.1	Sylvester matrices and vector representation of polynomials . . . . .	23
4.2.2	Homomorphism and Resultant . . . . .	24

---

\*Supported by FWF (Austrian Science Fund) project Y757.

4.2.3	Resultant as Polynomial Expression . . . . .	25
4.2.4	Resultant as Nonzero Polynomial Expression . . . . .	27
<b>5</b>	<b>Algebraic Numbers: Addition and Multiplication</b>	<b>28</b>
5.1	Addition of Algebraic Numbers . . . . .	29
5.1.1	<i>poly-add</i> has desired root . . . . .	29
5.1.2	<i>poly-add</i> is nonzero . . . . .	30
5.1.3	Summary for addition . . . . .	32
5.2	Division of Algebraic Numbers . . . . .	33
5.2.1	Summary for division . . . . .	34
5.3	Multiplication of Algebraic Numbers . . . . .	35
5.4	Summary: Closure Properties of Algebraic Numbers . . . . .	35
5.5	More on algebraic integers . . . . .	36
<b>6</b>	<b>Separation of Roots: Sturm</b>	<b>37</b>
6.1	Interface for Separating Roots . . . . .	38
6.2	Implementing Sturm on Rational Polynomials . . . . .	40
<b>7</b>	<b>Getting Small Representative Polynomials via Factorization</b>	<b>42</b>
<b>8</b>	<b>The minimal polynomial of an algebraic number</b>	<b>44</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>Real Algebraic Numbers</b>	<b>46</b>
9.1	Real Algebraic Numbers – Innermost Layer . . . . .	48
9.1.1	Basic Definitions . . . . .	48
9.2	Real Algebraic Numbers = Rational + Irrational Real Algebraic Numbers . . . . .	52
9.2.1	Definitions and Algorithms on Raw Type . . . . .	52
9.2.2	Definitions and Algorithms on Quotient Type . . . . .	52
9.2.3	Sign . . . . .	53
9.2.4	Normalization: Bounds Close Together . . . . .	53
9.2.5	Comparisons . . . . .	58
9.2.6	Negation . . . . .	58
9.2.7	Inverse . . . . .	59
9.2.8	Floor . . . . .	59
9.2.9	Generic Factorization and Bisection Framework . . . . .	60
9.2.10	Addition . . . . .	62
9.2.11	Multiplication . . . . .	64
9.2.12	Root . . . . .	65
9.2.13	Embedding of Rational Numbers . . . . .	67
9.2.14	Definitions and Algorithms on Type with Invariant . . . . .	70
9.3	Real Algebraic Numbers as Implementation for Real Numbers . . . . .	77
<b>10</b>	<b>Real Roots</b>	<b>78</b>

<b>11 Complex Roots of Real Valued Polynomials</b>	<b>82</b>
11.1 Compare Instance for Complex Numbers . . . . .	85
<b>12 Interval Arithmetic</b>	<b>86</b>
12.1 Syntactic Class Instantiations . . . . .	87
12.2 Class Instantiations . . . . .	87
12.3 Membership . . . . .	88
12.4 Convergence . . . . .	89
12.5 Complex Intervals . . . . .	90
<b>13 Complex Algebraic Numbers</b>	<b>92</b>
13.1 Complex Roots . . . . .	93
<b>14 Show for Real Algebraic Numbers – Interface</b>	<b>99</b>
<b>15 Show for Real (Algebraic) Numbers – Approximate Representation</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>16 Show for Real (Algebraic) Numbers – Unique Representation</b>	<b>100</b>
<b>17 Algebraic Number Tests</b>	<b>101</b>
17.1 Stand-Alone Examples . . . . .	102
17.2 Example Application: Compute Norms of Eigenvalues . . . . .	102
<b>18 Explicit Constants for External Code</b>	<b>103</b>
18.1 Operations on Real Algebraic Numbers . . . . .	103
18.2 Operations on Complex Algebraic Numbers . . . . .	104
18.3 Export Constants in Haskell . . . . .	104

## 1 Introduction

Isabelle’s previous implementation of irrational numbers was limited: it only admitted numbers expressed in the form “ $a + b\sqrt{c}$ ” for  $a, b, c \in \mathbb{Q}$ , and even computations like  $\sqrt{2} \cdot \sqrt{3}$  led to a runtime error [3].

In this work, we provide full support for the *real algebraic numbers*, i.e., the real numbers that are expressed as roots of non-zero integer polynomials, and we also partially support complex algebraic numbers.

Most of the results on algebraic numbers have been taken from a textbook by Bhubaneswar Mishra [2]. Also Wikipedia provided valuable help.

Concerning the real algebraic numbers, we first had to prove that they form a field. To show that the addition and multiplication of real algebraic numbers are also real algebraic numbers, we formalize the theory of *resultants*, which are the determinants of specific matrices, where the size

of these matrices depend on the degree of the polynomials. To this end, we utilized the matrix library provided in the Jordan-Normal-Form AFP-entry [4] where the matrix dimension can arbitrarily be chosen at runtime.

Given real algebraic numbers  $x$  and  $y$  expressed as the roots of polynomials, we compute a polynomial that has  $x+y$  or  $x \cdot y$  as its root via resultants. In order to guarantee that the resulting polynomial is non-zero, we needed the result that multivariate polynomials over fields form a unique factorization domain (UFD). To this end, we initially proved that polynomials over some UFD are again a UFD, relying upon results in HOL-algebra.

When performing actual computations with algebraic numbers, it is important to reduce the degree of the representing polynomials. To this end, we use the existing Berlekamp-Zassenhaus factorization algorithm. This is crucial for the default show-function for real algebraic numbers which requires the unique minimal polynomial representing the algebraic number – but an alternative which displays only an approximative value is also available.

In order to support tests on whether a given algebraic number is a rational number, we also make use of the fact that we compute the minimal polynomial.

The formalization of Sturm’s method [1] was crucial to separate the different roots of a fixed polynomial. We could nearly use it as it is, and just copied some function definition so that Sturm’s method now is available to separate the real roots of rational polynomial, where all computations are now performed over  $\mathbb{Q}$ .

With all the mentioned ingredients we implemented all arithmetic operations on real algebraic numbers, i.e., addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, comparison,  $n$ -th root, floor- and ceiling, and testing on membership in  $\mathbb{Q}$ . Moreover, we provide a method to create real algebraic numbers from a given rational polynomial, a method which computes precisely the set of real roots of a rational polynomial.

The absence of an equivalent to Sturm’s method for the complex numbers in Isabelle/HOL prevented us from having native support for complex algebraic numbers. Instead, we represent complex algebraic numbers as their real and imaginary part: note that a complex number is algebraic if and only if both the real and the imaginary part are real algebraic numbers. This equivalence also admitted us to design an algorithm which computes all complex roots of a rational polynomial. It first constructs a set of polynomials which represent all real and imaginary parts of all complex roots, yielding a superset of all roots, and afterwards the set just is just filtered.

By the fundamental theorem of algebra, we then also have a factorization algorithm for polynomials over  $\mathbb{C}$  with rational coefficients.

Finally, for factorizing a rational polynomial over  $\mathbb{R}$ , we first factorize it over  $\mathbb{C}$ , and then combine each pair of complex conjugate roots.

As future it would be interesting to include the result that the set of complex algebraic numbers is algebraically closed, i.e., at the moment we are limited to determine the complex roots of a polynomial over  $\mathbb{Q}$ , and cannot determine the real or complex roots of an polynomial having arbitrary algebraic coefficients.

Finally, an analog to Sturm's method for the complex numbers would be welcome, in order to have a smaller representation: for instance, currently the complex roots of  $1 + x + x^3$  are computed as “root #1 of  $1 + x + x^3$ ”, “(root #1 of  $-\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{4}x + x^3$ )+(root #1 of  $-\frac{31}{64} + \frac{9}{16}x^2 - \frac{3}{2}x^4 + x^6$ )i”, and “(root #1 of  $-\frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{4}x + x^3$ )+(root #2 of  $-\frac{31}{64} + \frac{9}{16}x^2 - \frac{3}{2}x^4 + x^6$ )i”.

## 2 Auxiliary Algorithms

## 3 Algebraic Numbers – Excluding Addition and Multiplication

This theory contains basic definition and results on algebraic numbers, namely that algebraic numbers are closed under negation, inversion,  $n$ -th roots, and that every rational number is algebraic. For all of these closure properties, corresponding polynomial witnesses are available.

Moreover, this theory contains the uniqueness result, that for every algebraic number there is exactly one content-free irreducible polynomial with positive leading coefficient for it. This result is stronger than similar ones which you find in many textbooks. The reason is that here we do not require a least degree construction.

This is essential, since given some content-free irreducible polynomial for  $x$ , how should we check whether the degree is optimal. In the formalized result, this is not required. The result is proven via GCDs, and that the GCD does not change when executed on the rational numbers or on the reals or complex numbers, and that the GCD of a rational polynomial can be expressed via the GCD of integer polynomials.

Many results are taken from the textbook [2, pages 317ff].

**theory** *Algebraic-Numbers-Prelim*

**imports**

*HOL-Computational-Algebra.Fundamental-Theorem-Algebra*

*Polynomial-Interpolation.Newton-Interpolation*

*Polynomial-Factorization.Gauss-Lemma*

*Berlekamp-Zassenhaus.Unique-Factorization-Poly*

*Polynomial-Factorization.Square-Free-Factorization*

**begin**

**lemma** *primitive-imp-unit-iff*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \{comm-semiring-1, semiring-no-zero-divisors\}$  *poly*

**assumes**  $pr$ : *primitive p*

**shows**  $p \text{ dvd } 1 \iff \text{degree } p = 0$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *dvd-all-coeffs-imp-dvd*:  
**assumes**  $\forall a \in \text{set } (\text{coeffs } p). c \text{ dvd } a$  **shows**  $[:c:] \text{ dvd } p$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *irreducible-content*:  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a::\{\text{comm-semiring-1}, \text{semiring-no-zero-divisors}\}$  *poly*  
**assumes** *irreducible*  $p$  **shows**  $\text{degree } p = 0 \vee \text{primitive } p$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *linear-irreducible-field*:  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{field}$  *poly*  
**assumes**  $\text{deg: degree } p = 1$  **shows** *irreducible*  $p$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *linear-irreducible-int*:  
**fixes**  $p :: \text{int}$  *poly*  
**assumes**  $\text{deg: degree } p = 1$  **and**  $\text{cp: content } p \text{ dvd } 1$   
**shows** *irreducible*  $p$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *irreducible-connect-rev*:  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \{\text{comm-semiring-1}, \text{semiring-no-zero-divisors}\}$  *poly*  
**assumes** *irr: irreducible*  $p$  **and**  $\text{deg: degree } p > 0$   
**shows** *irreducible<sub>d</sub>*  $p$   
*<proof>*

### 3.1 Polynomial Evaluation of Integer and Rational Polynomials in Fields.

**abbreviation** *ipoly* **where**  $\text{ipoly } f \ x \equiv \text{poly } (\text{of-int-poly } f) \ x$

**lemma** *poly-map-poly-code[code-unfold]*:  $\text{poly } (\text{map-poly } h \ p) \ x = \text{fold-coeffs } (\lambda \ a \ b. h \ a + x * b) \ p \ 0$   
*<proof>*

**abbreviation** *real-of-int-poly*  $:: \text{int } \text{poly} \Rightarrow \text{real } \text{poly}$  **where**  
 $\text{real-of-int-poly} \equiv \text{of-int-poly}$

**abbreviation** *real-of-rat-poly*  $:: \text{rat } \text{poly} \Rightarrow \text{real } \text{poly}$  **where**  
 $\text{real-of-rat-poly} \equiv \text{map-poly } \text{of-rat}$

**lemma** *of-rat-of-int[simp]*:  $\text{of-rat} \circ \text{of-int} = \text{of-int}$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-of-rat[simp]*:  $\text{ipoly } p \ (\text{of-rat } y) = \text{of-rat } (\text{ipoly } p \ y)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-of-real[simp]*:

*ipoly p (of-real x :: 'a :: {field,real-algebra-1}) = of-real (ipoly p x)*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *finite-ipoly-roots*: **assumes**  $p \neq 0$

**shows** *finite*  $\{x :: \text{real}. \text{ipoly } p \ x = 0\}$   
*<proof>*

### 3.2 Algebraic Numbers – Definition, Inverse, and Roots

A number  $x$  is algebraic iff it is the root of an integer polynomial. Whereas the Isabelle distribution this is defined via the embedding of integers in a field via  $\mathbb{Z}$ , we work with integer polynomials of type *int* and then use *ipoly* for evaluating the polynomial at a real or complex point.

**lemma** *algebraic-altdef-ipoly*:

**shows** *algebraic*  $x \longleftrightarrow (\exists p. \text{ipoly } p \ x = 0 \wedge p \neq 0)$   
*<proof>*

Definition of being algebraic with explicit witness polynomial.

**definition** *represents* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a :: field-char-0*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* (**infix** *represents* 51)  
**where** *p represents x* = (*ipoly p x = 0*  $\wedge$   $p \neq 0$ )

**lemma** *representsI[intro]*: *ipoly p x = 0*  $\Longrightarrow$   $p \neq 0$   $\Longrightarrow$  *p represents x*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *representsD*:

**assumes** *p represents x* **shows**  $p \neq 0$  **and** *ipoly p x = 0* *<proof>*

**lemma** *representsE*:

**assumes** *p represents x* **and**  $p \neq 0$   $\Longrightarrow$  *ipoly p x = 0*  $\Longrightarrow$  *thesis*  
**shows** *thesis* *<proof>*

**lemma** *represents-imp-degree*:

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}$   
**assumes** *p represents x* **shows** *degree p*  $\neq 0$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *representsE-full[elim]*:

**assumes** *rep: p represents x*  
**and** *main: p*  $\neq 0$   $\Longrightarrow$  *ipoly p x = 0*  $\Longrightarrow$  *degree p*  $\neq 0$   $\Longrightarrow$  *thesis*  
**shows** *thesis*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *represents-of-rat[simp]*: *p represents (of-rat x)* = *p represents x* *<proof>*

**lemma** *represents-of-real[simp]*: *p represents (of-real x)* = *p represents x* *<proof>*

**lemma** *algebraic-iff-represents*: *algebraic x*  $\longleftrightarrow (\exists p. p \text{ represents } x)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *represents-irr-non-0*:

**assumes** *irr*: irreducible *p* **and** *ap*: *p* represents *x* **and** *x0*:  $x \neq 0$

**shows**  $\text{poly } p \ 0 \neq 0$

*<proof>*

The polynomial encoding a rational number.

**definition** *poly-rat* ::  $\text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{int poly}$  **where**

*poly-rat* *x* = (case quotient-of *x* of (*n,d*)  $\Rightarrow$   $[-n,d]$ )

**definition** *abs-int-poly*::  $\text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{int poly}$  **where**

*abs-int-poly* *p*  $\equiv$  if lead-coeff *p* < 0 then  $-p$  else *p*

**lemma** *pos-poly-abs-poly[simp]*:

**shows**  $\text{lead-coeff } (\text{abs-int-poly } p) > 0 \iff p \neq 0$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *abs-int-poly-0[simp]*:  $\text{abs-int-poly } 0 = 0$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *abs-int-poly-eq-0-iff[simp]*:  $\text{abs-int-poly } p = 0 \iff p = 0$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *degree-abs-int-poly[simp]*:  $\text{degree } (\text{abs-int-poly } p) = \text{degree } p$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *abs-int-poly-dvd[simp]*:  $\text{abs-int-poly } p \ \text{dvd } q \iff p \ \text{dvd } q$

*<proof>*

**lemma** (in *idom*) *irreducible-uminus[simp]*:  $\text{irreducible } (-x) \iff \text{irreducible } x$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *irreducible-abs-int-poly[simp]*:

$\text{irreducible } (\text{abs-int-poly } p) \iff \text{irreducible } p$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *coeff-abs-int-poly[simp]*:

$\text{coeff } (\text{abs-int-poly } p) \ n = (\text{if } \text{lead-coeff } p < 0 \text{ then } - \text{coeff } p \ n \text{ else } \text{coeff } p \ n)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *lead-coeff-abs-int-poly[simp]*:

$\text{lead-coeff } (\text{abs-int-poly } p) = \text{abs } (\text{lead-coeff } p)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-abs-int-poly-eq-zero-iff[simp]*:

$\text{ipoly } (\text{abs-int-poly } p) \ (x :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1}) = 0 \iff \text{ipoly } p \ x = 0$

*<proof>*



**lemma** *abs-int-poly-represents*[simp]:  
*abs-int-poly p represents x*  $\longleftrightarrow$  *p represents x*  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *content-pCons*[simp]: *content (pCons a p) = gcd a (content p)*  
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *content-uminus*[simp]:  
**fixes** *p :: 'a :: ring-gcd poly* **shows** *content (-p) = content p*  
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *primitive-abs-int-poly*[simp]:  
*primitive (abs-int-poly p)  $\longleftrightarrow$  primitive p*  
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *abs-int-poly-inv*[simp]: *smult (sgn (lead-coeff p)) (abs-int-poly p) = p*  
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**definition** *cf-pos* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
*cf-pos p = (content p = 1  $\wedge$  lead-coeff p > 0)*

**definition** *cf-pos-poly* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly* **where**  
*cf-pos-poly f = (let*  
*c = content f;*  
*d = (sgn (lead-coeff f) \* c)*  
*in sdiv-poly f d)*

**lemma** *sgn-is-unit*[intro!]:  
**fixes** *x :: 'a :: linordered-idom*  
**assumes** *x  $\neq$  0*  
**shows** *sgn x dvd 1*  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *cf-pos-poly-0*[simp]: *cf-pos-poly 0 = 0*  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma** *cf-pos-poly-eq-0*[simp]: *cf-pos-poly f = 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  f = 0*  
 $\langle$ proof $\rangle$

**lemma**  
**shows** *cf-pos-poly-main*: *smult (sgn (lead-coeff f) \* content f) (cf-pos-poly f) = f* (**is** ?g1)  
**and** *content-cf-pos-poly*[simp]: *content (cf-pos-poly f) = (if f = 0 then 0 else 1)* (**is** ?g2)  
**and** *lead-coeff-cf-pos-poly*[simp]: *lead-coeff (cf-pos-poly f) > 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  f  $\neq$  0* (**is** ?g3)  
**and** *cf-pos-poly-dvd*[simp]: *cf-pos-poly f dvd f* (**is** ?g4)

*<proof>*

**lemma** *irreducible-connect-int*:

**fixes**  $p :: \text{int poly}$

**assumes**  $ir: \text{irreducible}_a p$  **and**  $c: \text{content } p = 1$

**shows** *irreducible*  $p$

*<proof>*

**lemma**

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{idom}, \text{ring-char-0}\}$

**shows** *ipoly-cf-pos-poly-eq-0*[simp]:  $\text{ipoly } (cf\text{-pos-poly } p) x = 0 \longleftrightarrow \text{ipoly } p x = 0$

**and** *degree-cf-pos-poly*[simp]:  $\text{degree } (cf\text{-pos-poly } p) = \text{degree } p$

**and** *cf-pos-cf-pos-poly*[intro]:  $p \neq 0 \implies cf\text{-pos } (cf\text{-pos-poly } p)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *cf-pos-poly-eq-1*:  $cf\text{-pos-poly } f = 1 \longleftrightarrow \text{degree } f = 0 \wedge f \neq 0$  (**is** ?l  $\longleftrightarrow$  ?r)

*<proof>*

**lemma** *irr-cf-poly-rat*[simp]: *irreducible* (*poly-rat*  $x$ )

*lead-coeff* (*poly-rat*  $x$ )  $> 0$  *primitive* (*poly-rat*  $x$ )

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-rat*[simp]:  $\text{ipoly } (poly\text{-rat } x) (of\text{-rat } x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}) = 0$  *ipoly* (*poly-rat*  $x$ )  $x = 0$

$poly\text{-rat } x \neq 0$  *ipoly* (*poly-rat*  $x$ )  $y = 0 \longleftrightarrow y = (of\text{-rat } x :: 'a)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-rat-represents-of-rat*: (*poly-rat*  $x$ ) *represents* (*of-rat*  $x$ ) *<proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-smult-0-iff*: **assumes**  $c: c \neq 0$

**shows** (*ipoly* (*smult*  $c$   $p$ )  $x = (0 :: \text{real})$ ) = (*ipoly*  $p x = 0$ )

*<proof>*

**lemma** *not-irreducibleD*:

**assumes**  $\neg \text{irreducible } x$  **and**  $x \neq 0$  **and**  $\neg x \text{ dvd } 1$

**shows**  $\exists y z. x = y * z \wedge \neg y \text{ dvd } 1 \wedge \neg z \text{ dvd } 1$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *cf-pos-poly-represents*[simp]: (*cf-pos-poly*  $p$ ) *represents*  $x \longleftrightarrow p$  *represents*  $x$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *coprime-prod*:

$a \neq 0 \implies c \neq 0 \implies \text{coprime } (a * b) (c * d) \implies \text{coprime } b (d :: 'a :: \{\text{semiring-gcd}\})$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *smult-prod*:

$\text{smult } a \ b = \text{monom } a \ 0 * b$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *degree-map-poly-2*:

**assumes**  $f \ (\text{lead-coeff } p) \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{degree } (\text{map-poly } f \ p) = \text{degree } p$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *irreducible-cf-pos-poly*:

**assumes**  $\text{irr} : \text{irreducible } p$  **and**  $\text{deg} : \text{degree } p \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{irreducible } (\text{cf-pos-poly } p)$  (**is**  $\text{irreducible } ?p$ )  
*<proof>*

**locale** *dvd-preserving-hom = comm-semiring-1-hom +*

**assumes**  $\text{hom-eq-mult-hom-imp} : \text{hom } x = \text{hom } y * hz \implies \exists z. hz = \text{hom } z \wedge x = y * z$

**begin**

**lemma** *hom-dvd-hom-iff[simp]*:  $\text{hom } x \ \text{dvd} \ \text{hom } y \iff x \ \text{dvd} \ y$   
*<proof>*

**sublocale** *unit-preserving-hom*  
*<proof>*

**sublocale** *zero-hom-0*  
*<proof>*

**end**

**lemma** *smult-inverse-monom*:  $p \neq 0 \implies \text{smult } (\text{inverse } c) \ (p :: \text{rat poly}) = 1 \iff p = [: c :]$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *of-int-monom*:  $\text{of-int-poly } p = [: \text{rat-of-int } c :] \iff p = [: c :]$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *degree-0-content*:

**fixes**  $p :: \text{int poly}$   
**assumes**  $\text{deg} : \text{degree } p = 0$  **shows**  $\text{content } p = \text{abs } (\text{coeff } p \ 0)$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *prime-elem-imp-gcd-eq*:

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{ring-gcd}$   
**shows**  $\text{prime-elem } x \implies \text{gcd } x \ y = \text{normalize } x \vee \text{gcd } x \ y = 1$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *irreducible-pos-gcd*:  
**fixes**  $p :: \text{int poly}$   
**assumes**  $ir$ : *irreducible*  $p$  **and**  $pos$ :  $\text{lead-coeff } p > 0$  **shows**  $\text{gcd } p \ q \in \{1, p\}$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *irreducible-pos-gcd-twice*:  
**fixes**  $p \ q :: \text{int poly}$   
**assumes**  $p$ : *irreducible*  $p$   $\text{lead-coeff } p > 0$   
**and**  $q$ : *irreducible*  $q$   $\text{lead-coeff } q > 0$   
**shows**  $\text{gcd } p \ q = 1 \vee p = q$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation** *of-rat-hom*: *field-hom-0'* *of-rat*  $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-zero-imp-not-unit*:  
**assumes**  $\text{poly } p \ x = 0$  **shows**  $\neg p \ \text{dvd } 1$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-prod-mset-zero-iff*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{idom}$   
**shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{prod-mset } F) \ x = 0 \longleftrightarrow (\exists f \in \# F. \text{poly } f \ x = 0)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-imp-represents-irreducible*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}$   
**assumes** *algebraic*  $x$   
**shows**  $\exists p. p \ \text{represents } x \wedge \text{irreducible } p$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-imp-represents-irreducible-cf-pos*:  
**assumes** *algebraic*  $(x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0})$   
**shows**  $\exists p. p \ \text{represents } x \wedge \text{irreducible } p \wedge \text{lead-coeff } p > 0 \wedge \text{primitive } p$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *gcd-of-int-poly*:  $\text{gcd } (\text{of-int-poly } f) (\text{of-int-poly } g :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\})$   
 $\text{poly} =$   
 $\text{smult } (\text{inverse } (\text{of-int } (\text{lead-coeff } (\text{gcd } f \ g)))) (\text{of-int-poly } (\text{gcd } f \ g))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-imp-represents-unique*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
**assumes** *algebraic*  $x$   
**shows**  $\exists! p. p \ \text{represents } x \wedge \text{irreducible } p \wedge \text{lead-coeff } p > 0$  (**is** *Ex1* ? $p$ )  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *ipoly-poly-compose*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{idom}$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly } (p \circ_p q) \ x = \text{ipoly } p \ (\text{ipoly } q \ x)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *algebraic-0*[simp]: *algebraic 0*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *algebraic-1*[simp]: *algebraic 1*  
*<proof>*

Polynomial for unary minus.

**definition** *poly-uminus* :: 'a :: ring-1 poly  $\Rightarrow$  'a poly **where** [code del]:  
*poly-uminus* p  $\equiv \sum_{i \leq \text{degree } p} \text{monom } ((-1)^{\hat{i}} * \text{coeff } p \ i) \ i$

**lemma** *poly-uminus-pCons-pCons*[simp]:  
*poly-uminus* (pCons a (pCons b p)) = pCons a (pCons (-b) (poly-uminus p)) (is ?l = ?r)  
*<proof>*

**fun** *poly-uminus-inner* :: 'a :: ring-1 list  $\Rightarrow$  'a poly  
**where** *poly-uminus-inner* [] = 0  
| *poly-uminus-inner* [a] = [a:]  
| *poly-uminus-inner* (a#b#cs) = pCons a (pCons (-b) (poly-uminus-inner cs))

**lemma** *poly-uminus-code*[code,simp]: *poly-uminus* p = *poly-uminus-inner* (coeffs p)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-uminus-inner-0*[simp]: *poly-uminus-inner* as = 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  Poly as = 0  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *degree-poly-uminus-inner*[simp]: *degree* (poly-uminus-inner as) = *degree* (Poly as)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-uminus-inner*[simp]:  
*ipoly* (poly-uminus-inner as) (x::'a::comm-ring-1) = *ipoly* (Poly as) (-x)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *represents-uminus*: **assumes** alg: p represents x  
**shows** (poly-uminus p) represents (-x)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *content-poly-uminus-inner*[simp]:  
**fixes** as :: 'a :: ring-gcd list  
**shows** *content* (poly-uminus-inner as) = *content* (Poly as)  
*<proof>*

Multiplicative inverse is represented by *reflect-poly*.

**lemma** *inverse-pow-minus*: **assumes** x  $\neq$  (0 :: 'a :: field)

**and**  $i \leq n$   
**shows**  $\text{inverse } x \wedge n * x \wedge i = \text{inverse } x \wedge (n - i)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** (**in** *inj-idom-hom*) *reflect-poly-hom*:  
 $\text{reflect-poly } (\text{map-poly hom } p) = \text{map-poly hom } (\text{reflect-poly } p)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *ipoly-reflect-poly*: **assumes**  $x: (x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}) \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly } (\text{reflect-poly } p) x = x \wedge (\text{degree } p) * \text{ipoly } p (\text{inverse } x)$  (**is**  $?l = ?r$ )  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *represents-inverse*: **assumes**  $x: x \neq 0$   
**and**  $\text{alg: } p \text{ represents } x$   
**shows**  $(\text{reflect-poly } p) \text{ represents } (\text{inverse } x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *inverse-roots*: **assumes**  $x: (x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}) \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly } (\text{reflect-poly } p) x = 0 \longleftrightarrow \text{ipoly } p (\text{inverse } x) = 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**context**  
**fixes**  $n :: \text{nat}$   
**begin**

Polynomial for n-th root.

**definition** *poly-nth-root*  $:: 'a :: \text{idom poly} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ poly}$  **where**  
 $\text{poly-nth-root } p = p \circ_p \text{ monom } 1 n$

**lemma** *ipoly-nth-root*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{idom}$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly } (\text{poly-nth-root } p) x = \text{ipoly } p (x \wedge n)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**context**  
**assumes**  $n: n \neq 0$   
**begin**  
**lemma** *poly-nth-root-0[simp]*:  $\text{poly-nth-root } p = 0 \longleftrightarrow p = 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *represents-nth-root*:  
**assumes**  $y: y \wedge n = x$  **and**  $\text{alg: } p \text{ represents } x$   
**shows**  $(\text{poly-nth-root } p) \text{ represents } y$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *represents-nth-root-odd-real*:  
**assumes**  $\text{alg: } p \text{ represents } x$  **and**  $\text{odd: odd } n$   
**shows**  $(\text{poly-nth-root } p) \text{ represents } (\text{root } n x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *represents-nth-root-pos-real*:  
**assumes** *alg*: *p* represents *x* **and** *pos*:  $x > 0$   
**shows** (*poly-nth-root* *p*) represents ( $\sqrt[n]{x}$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *represents-nth-root-neg-real*:  
**assumes** *alg*: *p* represents *x* **and** *neg*:  $x < 0$   
**shows** (*poly-uminus* (*poly-nth-root* (*poly-uminus* *p*))) represents ( $\sqrt[n]{x}$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**end**  
**end**

**lemma** *represents-csqr*:  
**assumes** *alg*: *p* represents *x* **shows** (*poly-nth-root* 2 *p*) represents ( $\sqrt{x}$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *represents-sqr*:  
**assumes** *alg*: *p* represents *x* **and** *pos*:  $x \geq 0$   
**shows** (*poly-nth-root* 2 *p*) represents ( $\sqrt{x}$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *represents-degree*:  
**assumes** *p* represents *x* **shows** *degree* *p*  $\neq 0$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

Polynomial for multiplying a rational number with an algebraic number.

**definition** *poly-mult-rat-main* **where**  
*poly-mult-rat-main* *n* *d* (*f* :: 'a :: idom poly) = (let *fs* = *coeffs* *f*; *k* = *length* *fs* in  
*poly-of-list* (map ( $\lambda$  (*fi*, *i*). *fi* \*  $d^i$  \*  $n^{(k - \text{Suc } i)}$ ) (*zip* *fs* [0 ..< *k*])))

**definition** *poly-mult-rat* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *int* poly  $\Rightarrow$  *int* poly **where**  
*poly-mult-rat* *r* *p*  $\equiv$  *case* *quotient-of* *r* of (*n*,*d*)  $\Rightarrow$  *poly-mult-rat-main* *n* *d* *p*

**lemma** *coeff-poly-mult-rat-main*: *coeff* (*poly-mult-rat-main* *n* *d* *f*) *i* = *coeff* *f* *i* \*  $n^{(\text{degree } f - i)}$  \*  $d^i$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *degree-poly-mult-rat-main*:  $n \neq 0 \implies \text{degree}$  (*poly-mult-rat-main* *n* *d* *f*) =  
(if *d* = 0 then 0 else *degree* *f*)  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *ipoly-mult-rat-main*:  
**fixes** *x* :: 'a :: {*field*,*ring-char-0*}  
**assumes** *d*  $\neq 0$  **and** *n*  $\neq 0$   
**shows** *ipoly* (*poly-mult-rat-main* *n* *d* *p*) *x* = *of-int*  $n^{\text{degree } p}$  \* *ipoly* *p* (*x* \*  
*of-int* *d* / *of-int* *n*)  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *degree-poly-mult-rat[simp]*: **assumes**  $r \neq 0$  **shows**  $\text{degree } (\text{poly-mult-rat } r \text{ } p) = \text{degree } p$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ipoly-mult-rat*:  
**assumes**  $r0: r \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly } (\text{poly-mult-rat } r \text{ } p) \ x = \text{of-int } (\text{fst } (\text{quotient-of } r)) \wedge \text{degree } p * \text{ipoly } p \ (x * \text{inverse } (\text{of-rat } r))$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-mult-rat-main-0[simp]*:  
**assumes**  $n \neq 0 \ d \neq 0$  **shows**  $\text{poly-mult-rat-main } n \ d \ p = 0 \longleftrightarrow p = 0$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-mult-rat-0[simp]*: **assumes**  $r0: r \neq 0$  **shows**  $\text{poly-mult-rat } r \ p = 0 \longleftrightarrow p = 0$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *represents-mult-rat*:  
**assumes**  $r: r \neq 0$  **and**  $p$  **represents**  $x$  **shows**  $(\text{poly-mult-rat } r \ p)$  **represents**  $(\text{of-rat } r * x)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

Polynomial for adding a rational number on an algebraic number. Again, we do not have to factor afterwards.

**definition** *poly-add-rat* ::  $\text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{int poly}$  **where**  
 $\text{poly-add-rat } r \ p \equiv \text{case quotient-of } r \text{ of } (n,d) \Rightarrow$   
 $(\text{poly-mult-rat-main } d \ 1 \ p \circ_p \ [:-n,d:])$

**lemma** *poly-add-rat-code[code]*:  $\text{poly-add-rat } r \ p \equiv \text{case quotient-of } r \text{ of } (n,d) \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{let } p' = (\text{let } fs = \text{coeffs } p; k = \text{length } fs \text{ in } \text{poly-of-list } (\text{map } (\lambda(fi, i). fi * d \wedge$   
 $(k - \text{Suc } i)) (\text{zip } fs \ [0..<k])))$ ;  
 $p'' = p' \circ_p \ [:-n,d:]$   
 $\text{in } p''$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *degree-poly-add-rat[simp]*:  $\text{degree } (\text{poly-add-rat } r \ p) = \text{degree } p$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ipoly-add-rat*:  $\text{ipoly } (\text{poly-add-rat } r \ p) \ x = (\text{of-int } (\text{snd } (\text{quotient-of } r)) \wedge \text{degree } p) * \text{ipoly } p \ (x - \text{of-rat } r)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-add-rat-0[simp]*:  $\text{poly-add-rat } r \ p = 0 \longleftrightarrow p = 0$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *add-rat-roots*:  $\text{ipoly } (\text{poly-add-rat } r \ p) \ x = 0 \longleftrightarrow \text{ipoly } p \ (x - \text{of-rat } r) = 0$



*<proof>*

**lemma** *represents-add-rat*:

**assumes** *p* represents *x* **shows** (*poly-add-rat* *r* *p*) represents (*of-rat* *r* + *x*)

*<proof>*

**lemmas** *pos-mult[simplified,simp]* = *mult-less-cancel-left-pos[of - 0]* *mult-less-cancel-left-pos[of - - 0]*

**lemma** *ipoly-add-rat-pos-neg*:

*ipoly* (*poly-add-rat* *r* *p*) (*x*::'*a*::*linordered-field*) < 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  *ipoly* *p* (*x* - *of-rat* *r*) < 0

*ipoly* (*poly-add-rat* *r* *p*) (*x*::'*a*::*linordered-field*) > 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  *ipoly* *p* (*x* - *of-rat* *r*) > 0

*<proof>*

**lemma** *sgn-ipoly-add-rat[simp]*:

*sgn* (*ipoly* (*poly-add-rat* *r* *p*) (*x*::'*a*::*linordered-field*)) = *sgn* (*ipoly* *p* (*x* - *of-rat* *r*)) (**is** *sgn* ?*l* = *sgn* ?*r*)

*<proof>*

**lemma** *deg-nonzero-represents*:

**assumes** *deg*: *degree* *p*  $\neq$  0 **shows**  $\exists$  *x* :: *complex*. *p* represents *x*

*<proof>*

**end**

## 4 Resultants

We need some results on resultants to show that a suitable prime for Berlekamp's algorithm always exists if the input is square free. Most of this theory has been developed for algebraic numbers, though. We moved this theory here, so that algebraic numbers can already use the factorization algorithm of this entry.

### 4.1 Bivariate Polynomials

**theory** *Bivariate-Polynomials*

**imports**

*Polynomial-Interpolation.Ring-Hom-Poly*

*Subresultants.More-Homomorphisms*

*Berlekamp-Zassenhaus.Unique-Factorization-Poly*

**begin**

#### 4.1.1 Evaluation of Bivariate Polynomials

**definition** *poly2* :: '*a*::*comm-semiring-1* *poly* *poly*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a*  $\Rightarrow$  '*a*

**where**  $\text{poly2 } p \ x \ y = \text{poly } (\text{poly } p \ [ : y : ]) \ x$

**lemma**  $\text{poly2-by-map}$ :  $\text{poly2 } p \ x = \text{poly } (\text{map-poly } (\lambda c. \text{poly } c \ x) \ p)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly2-const}$ [simp]:  $\text{poly2 } [ : a : ] \ x \ y = a \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly2-smult}$ [simp,hom-distrib]:  $\text{poly2 } (\text{smult } a \ p) \ x \ y = \text{poly } a \ x * \text{poly2 } p \ x \ y \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation**  $\text{poly2-hom}$ :  $\text{comm-semiring-hom } \lambda p. \text{poly2 } p \ x \ y \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation**  $\text{poly2-hom}$ :  $\text{comm-ring-hom } \lambda p. \text{poly2 } p \ x \ y \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation**  $\text{poly2-hom}$ :  $\text{idom-hom } \lambda p. \text{poly2 } p \ x \ y \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly2-pCons}$ [simp,hom-distrib]:  $\text{poly2 } (\text{pCons } a \ p) \ x \ y = \text{poly } a \ x + y * \text{poly2 } p \ x \ y \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly2-monom}$ :  $\text{poly2 } (\text{monom } a \ n) \ x \ y = \text{poly } a \ x * y ^ n \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly-poly-as-poly2}$ :  $\text{poly2 } p \ x (\text{poly } q \ x) = \text{poly } (\text{poly } p \ q) \ x \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

The following lemma is an extension rule for bivariate polynomials.

**lemma**  $\text{poly2-ext}$ :

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \{\text{ring-char-0}, \text{idom}\} \ \text{poly } \text{poly}$

**assumes**  $\bigwedge x \ y. \text{poly2 } p \ x \ y = \text{poly2 } q \ x \ y$  **shows**  $p = q$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**abbreviation**  $(\text{input}) \ \text{coeff-lift2} == \lambda a. [ : a : ]$

**lemma**  $\text{coeff-lift2-lift}$ :  $\text{coeff-lift2} = \text{coeff-lift} \circ \text{coeff-lift} \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{poly-lift} = \text{map-poly } \text{coeff-lift}$

**definition**  $\text{poly-lift2} = \text{map-poly } \text{coeff-lift2}$

**lemma**  $\text{degree-poly-lift}$ [simp]:  $\text{degree } (\text{poly-lift } p) = \text{degree } p$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly-lift-0}$ [simp]:  $\text{poly-lift } 0 = 0 \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly-lift-0-iff}$ [simp]:  $\text{poly-lift } p = 0 \iff p = 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{poly-lift-pCons}$ [simp]:  
 $\text{poly-lift } (\text{pCons } a \ p) = \text{pCons } [ : a : ] (\text{poly-lift } p)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{coeff-poly-lift}$ [simp]:  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add } \text{poly}$   
**shows**  $\text{coeff } (\text{poly-lift } p) \ i = \text{coeff-lift } (\text{coeff } p \ i)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *pcompose-conv-poly*:  $pcompose\ p\ q = poly\ (poly\text{-lift}\ p)\ q$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**interpretation** *poly-lift-hom*: *inj-comm-monoid-add-hom* *poly-lift*  
 ⟨proof⟩

**interpretation** *poly-lift-hom*: *inj-comm-semiring-hom* *poly-lift*  
 ⟨proof⟩

**interpretation** *poly-lift-hom*: *inj-comm-ring-hom* *poly-lift* ⟨proof⟩

**interpretation** *poly-lift-hom*: *inj-idom-hom* *poly-lift* ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** (in *comm-monoid-add-hom*) *map-poly-hom-coeff-lift*[*simp*, *hom-distrib*]:  
 $map\text{-poly}\ hom\ (coeff\text{-lift}\ a) = coeff\text{-lift}\ (hom\ a)$  ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** (in *comm-ring-hom*) *map-poly-coeff-lift-hom*:  
 $map\text{-poly}\ (coeff\text{-lift}\ \circ\ hom)\ p = map\text{-poly}\ (map\text{-poly}\ hom)\ (map\text{-poly}\ coeff\text{-lift}\ p)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-poly-lift*[*simp*]:  
 fixes  $p :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring}\ 0\ poly$   
 shows  $poly\ (poly\text{-lift}\ p)\ [:x:] = [: poly\ p\ x :]$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *degree-poly-lift2*[*simp*]:  
 $degree\ (poly\text{-lift2}\ p) = degree\ p$  ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-lift2-0*[*simp*]:  $poly\text{-lift2}\ 0 = 0$  ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-lift2-0-iff*[*simp*]:  $poly\text{-lift2}\ p = 0 \longleftrightarrow p = 0$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-lift2-pCons*[*simp*]:  
 $poly\text{-lift2}\ (pCons\ a\ p) = pCons\ [[:a:]]\ (poly\text{-lift2}\ p)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-lift2-lift*:  $poly\text{-lift2} = poly\text{-lift} \circ poly\text{-lift}$  (is ?l = ?r)  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly2-poly-lift*[*simp*]:  $poly2\ (poly\text{-lift}\ p)\ x\ y = poly\ p\ y$  ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *poly-lift2-nonzero*:  
 assumes  $p \neq 0$  shows  $poly\text{-lift2}\ p \neq 0$   
 ⟨proof⟩

#### 4.1.2 Swapping the Order of Variables

**definition**

$poly\text{-y-x}\ p \equiv \sum_{i \leq degree\ p} \sum_{j \leq degree\ (coeff\ p\ i)} monom\ (monom\ (coeff\ (coeff\ p\ i)\ j)\ i)\ j$

**lemma** *poly-y-x-fix-y-deg*:

**assumes** *ydeg*:  $\forall i \leq \text{degree } p. \text{degree } (\text{coeff } p \ i) \leq d$

**shows**  $\text{poly-y-x } p = (\sum_{i \leq \text{degree } p}. \sum_{j \leq d}. \text{monom } (\text{monom } (\text{coeff } (\text{coeff } p \ i) \ j) \ i) \ j)$

(**is**  $- = \text{sum } (\lambda i. \text{sum } (?f \ i) \ -)$ )

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-y-x-fixed-deg*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add } \text{poly } \text{poly}$

**defines**  $d \equiv \text{Max } \{ \text{degree } (\text{coeff } p \ i) \mid i. i \leq \text{degree } p \}$

**shows**  $\text{poly-y-x } p = (\sum_{i \leq \text{degree } p}. \sum_{j \leq d}. \text{monom } (\text{monom } (\text{coeff } (\text{coeff } p \ i) \ j) \ i) \ j)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-y-x-swapped*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add } \text{poly } \text{poly}$

**defines**  $d \equiv \text{Max } \{ \text{degree } (\text{coeff } p \ i) \mid i. i \leq \text{degree } p \}$

**shows**  $\text{poly-y-x } p = (\sum_{j \leq d}. \sum_{i \leq \text{degree } p}. \text{monom } (\text{monom } (\text{coeff } (\text{coeff } p \ i) \ j) \ i) \ j)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly2-poly-y-x[simp]*:  $\text{poly2 } (\text{poly-y-x } p) \ x \ y = \text{poly2 } p \ y \ x$

*<proof>*

**context begin**

**private lemma** *poly-monom-mult*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-1}$

**shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{monom } p \ i * q \ ^{\wedge} j) \ y = \text{poly } (\text{monom } p \ j * [:y:] \ ^{\wedge} i) \ (\text{poly } q \ y)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-poly-y-x*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-1 } \text{poly } \text{poly}$

**shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{poly } (\text{poly-y-x } p) \ q) \ y = \text{poly } (\text{poly } p \ [:y:]) \ (\text{poly } q \ y)$

*<proof>*

**end**

**interpretation** *poly-y-x-hom*: *zero-hom poly-y-x* *<proof>*

**interpretation** *poly-y-x-hom*: *one-hom poly-y-x* *<proof>*

**lemma** *map-poly-sum-commute*:

**assumes**  $h \ 0 = 0 \ \forall p \ q. h \ (p + q) = h \ p + h \ q$

**shows**  $\text{sum } (\lambda i. \text{map-poly } h \ (f \ i)) \ S = \text{map-poly } h \ (\text{sum } f \ S)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-y-x-const*:  $\text{poly-y-x } [:p:] = \text{poly-lift } p \ (\text{is } ?l = ?r)$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-y-x-pCons*:

**shows**  $\text{poly-y-x } (p\text{Cons } a \ p) = \text{poly-lift } a + \text{map-poly } (p\text{Cons } 0) \ (\text{poly-y-x } p)$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-y-x-pCons-0*:  $\text{poly-y-x } (p\text{Cons } 0 \ p) = \text{map-poly } (p\text{Cons } 0) \ (\text{poly-y-x } p)$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-y-x-map-poly-pCons-0*:  $\text{poly-y-x } (\text{map-poly } (p\text{Cons } 0) \ p) = p\text{Cons } 0$   
*(poly-y-x p)*  
*<proof>*

**interpretation** *poly-y-x-hom*: *comm-monoid-add-hom poly-y-x :: 'a :: comm-monoid-add poly poly*  $\Rightarrow$  -  
*<proof>*

*poly-y-x* is bijective.

**lemma** *poly-y-x-poly-lift*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add poly}$   
**shows**  $\text{poly-y-x } (\text{poly-lift } p) = [:p:]$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-y-x-id[simp]*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add poly poly}$   
**shows**  $\text{poly-y-x } (\text{poly-y-x } p) = p$   
*<proof>*

**interpretation** *poly-y-x-hom*:

*bijective poly-y-x :: 'a :: comm-monoid-add poly poly*  $\Rightarrow$  -  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *inv-poly-y-x[simp]*: *Hilbert-Choice.inv poly-y-x = poly-y-x* *<proof>*

**interpretation** *poly-y-x-hom*: *comm-monoid-add-isom poly-y-x*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *pCons-as-add*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-1 poly}$   
**shows**  $p\text{Cons } a \ p = [:a:] + \text{monom } 1 \ 1 * p$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *mult-pCons-0*:  $(*) \ (p\text{Cons } 0 \ 1) = p\text{Cons } 0$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *pCons-0-as-mult*:

**shows**  $p\text{Cons } (0 :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-1}) = (\lambda p. p\text{Cons } 0 \ 1 * p)$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *map-poly-pCons-0-as-mult*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-1 poly poly}$   
**shows**  $\text{map-poly } (p\text{Cons } 0) \ p = [:p\text{Cons } 0 \ 1:] * p$   
*<proof>*

```

lemma poly-y-x-monom:
  fixes a :: 'a :: comm-semiring-1 poly
  shows poly-y-x (monom a n) = smult (monom 1 n) (poly-lift a)
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma poly-y-x-smult:
  fixes c :: 'a :: comm-semiring-1 poly
  shows poly-y-x (smult c p) = poly-lift c * poly-y-x p (is ?l = ?r)
  ⟨proof⟩

interpretation poly-y-x-hom:
  comm-semiring-isom poly-y-x :: 'a :: comm-semiring-1 poly poly ⇒ -
  ⟨proof⟩

interpretation poly-y-x-hom: comm-ring-isom poly-y-x⟨proof⟩
interpretation poly-y-x-hom: idom-isom poly-y-x⟨proof⟩

lemma Max-degree-coeff-pCons:
  Max { degree (coeff (pCons a p) i) | i. i ≤ degree (pCons a p) } =
  max (degree a) (Max { degree (coeff p x) | x. x ≤ degree p })
  ⟨proof⟩

lemma degree-poly-y-x:
  fixes p :: 'a :: comm-ring-1 poly poly
  assumes p ≠ 0
  shows degree (poly-y-x p) = Max { degree (coeff p i) | i. i ≤ degree p }
  (is - = ?d p)
  ⟨proof⟩

end

```

## 4.2 Resultant

This theory contains facts about resultants which are required for addition and multiplication of algebraic numbers.

The results are taken from the textbook [2, pages 227ff and 235ff].

```

theory Resultant
imports
  HOL-Computational-Algebra.Fundamental-Theorem-Algebra
  Subresultants.Resultant-Prelim
  Berkamp-Zassenhaus.Unique-Factorization-Poly
  Bivariate-Polynomials
begin

```

## 4.2.1 Sylvester matrices and vector representation of polynomials

**definition** *vec-of-poly-rev-shifted* where

*vec-of-poly-rev-shifted*  $p\ n\ j \equiv$   
 $vec\ n\ (\lambda i. \text{if } i \leq j \wedge j \leq \text{degree } p + i \text{ then } \text{coeff } p\ (\text{degree } p + i - j) \text{ else } 0)$

**lemma** *vec-of-poly-rev-shifted-dim[simp]*:  $\text{dim-vec } (vec\ \text{of-poly-rev-shifted } p\ n\ j) = n$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *col-sylvester*:

**fixes**  $p\ q$

**defines**  $m \equiv \text{degree } p$  **and**  $n \equiv \text{degree } q$

**assumes**  $j: j < m+n$

**shows**  $\text{col } (sylvester\ \text{mat } p\ q)\ j =$

$vec\ \text{of-poly-rev-shifted } p\ n\ j\ @_v\ vec\ \text{of-poly-rev-shifted } q\ m\ j$  (**is**  $?l = ?r$ )

*<proof>*

**lemma** *inj-on-diff-nat2*:  $\text{inj-on } (\lambda i. (n::nat) - i)\ \{..n\}$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *image-diff-atMost*:  $(\lambda i. (n::nat) - i)\ \{..n\} = \{..n\}$  (**is**  $?l = ?r$ )

*<proof>*

**lemma** *sylvester-sum-mat-upper*:

**fixes**  $p\ q :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-1 poly}$

**defines**  $m \equiv \text{degree } p$  **and**  $n \equiv \text{degree } q$

**assumes**  $i: i < n$

**shows**  $(\sum j < m+n. \text{monom } (sylvester\ \text{mat } p\ q\ \$\$ (i,j))\ (m + n - \text{Suc } j)) =$   
 $\text{monom } 1\ (n - \text{Suc } i) * p$  (**is**  $\text{sum } ?f - = ?r$ )

*<proof>*

**lemma** *sylvester-sum-mat-lower*:

**fixes**  $p\ q :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-1 poly}$

**defines**  $m \equiv \text{degree } p$  **and**  $n \equiv \text{degree } q$

**assumes**  $ni: n \leq i$  **and**  $imn: i < m+n$

**shows**  $(\sum j < m+n. \text{monom } (sylvester\ \text{mat } p\ q\ \$\$ (i,j))\ (m + n - \text{Suc } j)) =$   
 $\text{monom } 1\ (m + n - \text{Suc } i) * q$  (**is**  $\text{sum } ?f - = ?r$ )

*<proof>*

**definition** *vec-of-poly*  $p \equiv \text{let } m = \text{degree } p \text{ in } vec\ (\text{Suc } m)\ (\lambda i. \text{coeff } p\ (m-i))$

**definition** *poly-of-vec*  $v \equiv \text{let } d = \text{dim-vec } v \text{ in } \sum i < d. \text{monom } (v\ \$\ (d - \text{Suc } i))\ i$

**lemma** *poly-of-vec-of-poly[simp]*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add poly}$

**shows**  $\text{poly-of-vec } (vec\ \text{of-poly } p) = p$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-of-vec-0[simp]*:  $\text{poly-of-vec } (0_v \ n) = 0$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-of-vec-0-iff[simp]*:

**fixes**  $v :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add vec}$

**shows**  $\text{poly-of-vec } v = 0 \iff v = 0_v \ (\text{dim-vec } v)$  **(is ?v = -  $\iff$  - = ?z)**  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *degree-sum-smaller*:

**assumes**  $n > 0$  *finite*  $A$

**shows**  $(\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies \text{degree } (f \ x) < n) \implies \text{degree } (\sum_{x \in A}. f \ x) < n$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *degree-poly-of-vec-less*:

**fixes**  $v :: 'a :: \text{comm-monoid-add vec}$

**assumes**  $\text{dim: dim-vec } v > 0$

**shows**  $\text{degree } (\text{poly-of-vec } v) < \text{dim-vec } v$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *coeff-poly-of-vec*:

$\text{coeff } (\text{poly-of-vec } v) \ i = (\text{if } i < \text{dim-vec } v \text{ then } v \ \$ \ (\text{dim-vec } v - \text{Suc } i) \ \text{else } 0)$

**(is ?l = ?r)**

*<proof>*

**lemma** *vec-of-poly-rev-shifted-scalar-prod*:

**fixes**  $p \ v$

**defines**  $q \equiv \text{poly-of-vec } v$

**assumes**  $m[\text{simp}]: \text{degree } p = m$  **and**  $n: \text{dim-vec } v = n$

**assumes**  $j: j < m+n$

**shows**  $\text{vec-of-poly-rev-shifted } p \ n \ (n+m-\text{Suc } j) \cdot v = \text{coeff } (p * q) \ j$  **(is ?l = ?r)**

*<proof>*

**lemma** *syvester-vec-poly*:

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \text{comm-semiring-0 poly}$

**defines**  $m \equiv \text{degree } p$

**and**  $n \equiv \text{degree } q$

**assumes**  $v: v \in \text{carrier-vec } (m+n)$

**shows**  $\text{poly-of-vec } (\text{transpose-mat } (\text{syvester-mat } p \ q) * v \ v) =$

$\text{poly-of-vec } (\text{vec-first } v \ n) * p + \text{poly-of-vec } (\text{vec-last } v \ m) * q$  **(is ?l = ?r)**

*<proof>*

## 4.2.2 Homomorphism and Resultant

Here we prove Lemma 7.3.1 of the textbook.

**lemma**(in *comm-ring-hom*) *resultant-sub-map-poly*:

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a \ \text{poly}$

**shows**  $\text{hom } (\text{resultant-sub } m \ n \ p \ q) = \text{resultant-sub } m \ n \ (\text{map-poly } \text{hom } p)$

*(map-poly hom q)*

**(is ?l = ?r')**



*<proof>*

### 4.2.3 Resultant as Polynomial Expression

**context begin**

This context provides notions for proving Lemma 7.2.1 of the textbook.

**private fun** *mk-poly-sub* **where**

*mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$   $0 = A$   
| *mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$  (*Suc*  $j$ ) = *mat-addcol* (*monom* 1 (*Suc*  $j$ ))  $l$  ( $l - \text{Suc } j$ ) (*mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$   $j$ )

**definition** *mk-poly*  $A = \text{mk-poly-sub}$  (*map-mat coeff-lift*  $A$ ) (*dim-col*  $A - 1$ )  
(*dim-col*  $A - 1$ )

**private lemma** *mk-poly-sub-dim[simp]*:

*dim-row* (*mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$   $j$ ) = *dim-row*  $A$   
*dim-col* (*mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$   $j$ ) = *dim-col*  $A$

*<proof>* **lemma** *mk-poly-sub-carrier*:

**assumes**  $A \in \text{carrier-mat } nr \ nc$  **shows** *mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$   $j \in \text{carrier-mat } nr \ nc$

*<proof>* **lemma** *mk-poly-dim[simp]*:

*dim-col* (*mk-poly*  $A$ ) = *dim-col*  $A$   
*dim-row* (*mk-poly*  $A$ ) = *dim-row*  $A$

*<proof>* **lemma** *mk-poly-sub-others[simp]*:

**assumes**  $l \neq j'$  **and**  $i < \text{dim-row } A$  **and**  $j' < \text{dim-col } A$

**shows** *mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$   $j$   $\$ \$ (i, j') = A$   $\$ \$ (i, j')$

*<proof>* **lemma** *mk-poly-others[simp]*:

**assumes**  $i: i < \text{dim-row } A$  **and**  $j: j < \text{dim-col } A - 1$

**shows** *mk-poly*  $A$   $\$ \$ (i, j) = [ : A$   $\$ \$ (i, j) : ]$

*<proof>* **lemma** *mk-poly-delete[simp]*:

**assumes**  $i: i < \text{dim-row } A$

**shows** *mat-delete* (*mk-poly*  $A$ )  $i$  (*dim-col*  $A - 1$ ) = *map-mat coeff-lift* (*mat-delete*  $A$   $i$  (*dim-col*  $A - 1$ ))

*<proof>* **lemma** *col-mk-poly-sub[simp]*:

**assumes**  $l \neq j'$  **and**  $j' < \text{dim-col } A$

**shows** *col* (*mk-poly-sub*  $A$   $l$   $j$ )  $j' = \text{col } A$   $j'$

*<proof>* **lemma** *det-mk-poly-sub*:

**assumes**  $A: (A :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly mat}) \in \text{carrier-mat } n \ n$  **and**  $i: i < n$

**shows** *det* (*mk-poly-sub*  $A$  ( $n - 1$ )  $i$ ) = *det*  $A$

*<proof>* **lemma** *det-mk-poly*:

**fixes**  $A :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 mat}$

**shows** *det* (*mk-poly*  $A$ ) =  $[ : \text{det } A : ]$

*<proof>* **fun** *mk-poly2-row* **where**

*mk-poly2-row*  $A$   $d$   $j$   $pv$   $0 = pv$

| *mk-poly2-row*  $A$   $d$   $j$   $pv$  (*Suc*  $n$ ) =

*mk-poly2-row*  $A$   $d$   $j$   $pv$   $n$  | <sub>$v$</sub>   $n \mapsto pv$   $\$$   $n + \text{monom } (A\$ \$ (n, j))$   $d$

**private fun** *mk-poly2-col* **where**

*mk-poly2-col*  $A$   $pv$   $0 = pv$

| *mk-poly2-col*  $A$   $pv$  (*Suc*  $m$ ) =

$mk\text{-poly2-row } A \ m \ (dim\text{-col } A - Suc \ m) \ (mk\text{-poly2-col } A \ pv \ m) \ (dim\text{-row } A)$

**private definition**  $mk\text{-poly2 } A \equiv mk\text{-poly2-col } A \ (0_v \ (dim\text{-row } A)) \ (dim\text{-col } A)$

**private lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-row-dim}[simp]$ :  $dim\text{-vec } (mk\text{-poly2-row } A \ d \ j \ pv \ i) = dim\text{-vec } pv$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-col-dim}[simp]$ :  $dim\text{-vec } (mk\text{-poly2-col } A \ pv \ j) = dim\text{-vec } pv$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-row}$ :

**assumes**  $n$ :  $n \leq dim\text{-vec } pv$

**shows**  $mk\text{-poly2-row } A \ d \ j \ pv \ n \ \$ \ i =$

*(if*  $i < n$  *then*  $pv \ \$ \ i + monom \ (A \ \$\$ \ (i,j)) \ d$  *else*  $pv \ \$ \ i$  *)*

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-row-col}$ :

**assumes**  $dim[simp]$ :  $dim\text{-vec } pv = n$   $dim\text{-row } A = n$  **and**  $j$ :  $j < dim\text{-col } A$

**shows**  $mk\text{-poly2-row } A \ d \ j \ pv \ n = pv + map\text{-vec } (\lambda a. monom \ a \ d) \ (col \ A \ j)$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-col}$ :

**fixes**  $pv :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 poly vec}$  **and**  $A :: 'a \ mat$

**assumes**  $i$ :  $i < dim\text{-row } A$  **and**  $dim$ :  $dim\text{-row } A = dim\text{-vec } pv$

**shows**  $mk\text{-poly2-col } A \ pv \ j \ \$ \ i = pv \ \$ \ i + (\sum j' < j. monom \ (A \ \$\$ \ (i, dim\text{-col } A - Suc \ j')) \ j')$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-pre}$ :

**fixes**  $A :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 mat}$

**assumes**  $i$ :  $i < dim\text{-row } A$

**shows**  $mk\text{-poly2 } A \ \$ \ i = (\sum j' < dim\text{-col } A. monom \ (A \ \$\$ \ (i, dim\text{-col } A - Suc \ j')) \ j')$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2}$ :

**fixes**  $A :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 mat}$

**assumes**  $i$ :  $i < dim\text{-row } A$

**and**  $c$ :  $dim\text{-col } A > 0$

**shows**  $mk\text{-poly2 } A \ \$ \ i = (\sum j' < dim\text{-col } A. monom \ (A \ \$\$ \ (i,j')) \ (dim\text{-col } A - Suc \ j'))$

*(is*  $?l = sum \ ?f \ ?S$  *)*

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-sylvester-upper}$ :

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 poly}$

**assumes**  $i$ :  $i < degree \ q$

**shows**  $mk\text{-poly2 } (sylvester\text{-mat } p \ q) \ \$ \ i = monom \ 1 \ (degree \ q - Suc \ i) * p$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly2-sylvester-lower}$ :

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 poly}$

**assumes**  $mi$ :  $i \geq degree \ q$  **and**  $imn$ :  $i < degree \ p + degree \ q$

**shows**  $mk\text{-poly2 } (sylvester\text{-mat } p \ q) \ \$ \ i = monom \ 1 \ (degree \ p + degree \ q - Suc \ i) * q$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $foo$ :

**fixes**  $v :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 vec}$

**shows**  $monom \ 1 \ d \ \cdot_v \ map\text{-vec } coeff\text{-lift } v = map\text{-vec } (\lambda a. monom \ a \ d) \ v$

*<proof>* **lemma**  $mk\text{-poly-sub-corresp}$ :

**assumes**  $dimA[simp]$ :  $dim\text{-col } A = Suc \ l$  **and**  $dimpv[simp]$ :  $dim\text{-vec } pv = dim\text{-row } A$

**and**  $j$ :  $j < dim\text{-col } A$

**shows**  $pv + col \ (mk\text{-poly-sub } (map\text{-mat } coeff\text{-lift } A) \ l \ j) \ l =$

$mk\text{-poly2-col } A \text{ pv } (Suc \ j)$   
 <proof> **lemma** *col-mk-poly-mk-poly2*:  
 fixes  $A :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 } mat$   
 assumes  $dim: dim\text{-col } A > 0$   
 shows  $col (mk\text{-poly } A) (dim\text{-col } A - 1) = mk\text{-poly2 } A$   
 <proof> **lemma** *mk-poly-mk-poly2*:  
 fixes  $A :: 'a :: comm\text{-semiring-1 } mat$   
 assumes  $dim: dim\text{-col } A > 0$  and  $i: i < dim\text{-row } A$   
 shows  $mk\text{-poly } A \ \$\$ (i, dim\text{-col } A - 1) = mk\text{-poly2 } A \ \$ i$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *mk-poly-sylvester-upper*:  
 fixes  $p \ q :: 'a :: comm\text{-ring-1 } poly$   
 defines  $m \equiv degree \ p$  and  $n \equiv degree \ q$   
 assumes  $i: i < n$   
 shows  $mk\text{-poly } (sylvester\text{-mat } p \ q) \ \$\$ (i, m + n - 1) = monom \ 1 \ (n - Suc \ i)$   
 $* \ p \ (is \ ?l = ?r)$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *mk-poly-sylvester-lower*:  
 fixes  $p \ q :: 'a :: comm\text{-ring-1 } poly$   
 defines  $m \equiv degree \ p$  and  $n \equiv degree \ q$   
 assumes  $ni: n \leq i$  and  $imn: i < m + n$   
 shows  $mk\text{-poly } (sylvester\text{-mat } p \ q) \ \$\$ (i, m + n - 1) = monom \ 1 \ (m + n -$   
 $Suc \ i) * q \ (is \ ?l = ?r)$   
 <proof>

The next lemma corresponds to Lemma 7.2.1.

**lemma** *resultant-as-poly*:  
 fixes  $p \ q :: 'a :: comm\text{-ring-1 } poly$   
 assumes  $degp: degree \ p > 0$  and  $degq: degree \ q > 0$   
 shows  $\exists p' \ q'. degree \ p' < degree \ q \wedge degree \ q' < degree \ p \wedge$   
 $[: resultant \ p \ q :] = p' * p + q' * q$   
 <proof>

end

#### 4.2.4 Resultant as Nonzero Polynomial Expression

**lemma** *resultant-zero*:  
 fixes  $p \ q :: 'a :: comm\text{-ring-1 } poly$   
 assumes  $deg: degree \ p > 0 \vee degree \ q > 0$   
 and  $xp: poly \ p \ x = 0$  and  $xq: poly \ q \ x = 0$   
 shows  $resultant \ p \ q = 0$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *poly-resultant-zero*:  
 fixes  $p \ q :: 'a :: comm\text{-ring-1 } poly \ poly$   
 assumes  $deg: degree \ p > 0 \vee degree \ q > 0$   
 assumes  $p0: poly2 \ p \ x \ y = 0$  and  $q0: poly2 \ q \ x \ y = 0$

**shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{resultant } p \ q) \ x = 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *resultant-as-nonzero-poly-weak*:

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \text{idom poly}$   
**assumes**  $\text{degp}: \text{degree } p > 0$  **and**  $\text{degq}: \text{degree } q > 0$   
**and**  $r0: \text{resultant } p \ q \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\exists p' \ q'. \text{degree } p' < \text{degree } q \wedge \text{degree } q' < \text{degree } p \wedge$   
 $[\text{resultant } p \ q :] = p' * p + q' * q \wedge p' \neq 0 \wedge q' \neq 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Next lemma corresponds to Lemma 7.2.2 of the textbook

**lemma** *resultant-as-nonzero-poly*:

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \text{idom poly}$   
**defines**  $m \equiv \text{degree } p$  **and**  $n \equiv \text{degree } q$   
**assumes**  $\text{degp}: m > 0$  **and**  $\text{degq}: n > 0$   
**shows**  $\exists p' \ q'. \text{degree } p' < n \wedge \text{degree } q' < m \wedge$   
 $[\text{resultant } p \ q :] = p' * p + q' * q \wedge p' \neq 0 \wedge q' \neq 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Corresponds to Lemma 7.2.3 of the textbook

**lemma** *resultant-zero-imp-common-factor*:

**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \text{ufd poly}$   
**assumes**  $\text{deg}: \text{degree } p > 0 \vee \text{degree } q > 0$  **and**  $r0: \text{resultant } p \ q = 0$   
**shows**  $\neg \text{coprime } p \ q$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *resultant-non-zero-imp-coprime*:

**assumes**  $\text{nz}: \text{resultant } (f :: 'a :: \text{field poly}) \ g \neq 0$   
**and**  $\text{nz}': f \neq 0 \vee g \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{coprime } f \ g$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**end**

## 5 Algebraic Numbers: Addition and Multiplication

This theory contains the remaining field operations for algebraic numbers, namely addition and multiplication.

**theory** *Algebraic-Numbers*

**imports**

*Algebraic-Numbers-Prelim*

*Resultant*

*Polynomial-Factorization.Polynomial-Divisibility*

**begin**

**interpretation** *coeff-hom*: *monoid-add-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ i \ \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation** *coeff-hom: comm-monoid-add-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ i \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**interpretation** *coeff-hom: group-add-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ i \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**interpretation** *coeff-hom: ab-group-add-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ i \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**interpretation** *coeff-0-hom: monoid-mult-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ 0 \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**interpretation** *coeff-0-hom: semiring-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ 0 \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**interpretation** *coeff-0-hom: comm-monoid-mult-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ 0 \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**interpretation** *coeff-0-hom: comm-semiring-hom*  $\lambda p. \text{coeff } p \ 0 \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

## 5.1 Addition of Algebraic Numbers

**definition**  $x-y \equiv [[: 0, 1 :], -1 :]$

**definition**  $\text{poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \ p = \text{poly-lift } p \circ_p \ x-y$

**lemma** *coeff-xy-power*:

**assumes**  $k \leq n$

**shows**  $\text{coeff } (x-y \wedge n :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly poly}) \ k =$   
 $\text{monom } (\text{of-nat } (n \ \text{choose } (n - k)) * (-1) \wedge k) \ (n - k)$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

The following polynomial represents the sum of two algebraic numbers.

**definition**  $\text{poly-add} :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly} \Rightarrow 'a \ \text{poly} \Rightarrow 'a \ \text{poly}$  **where**  
 $\text{poly-add } p \ q = \text{resultant } (\text{poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \ p) \ (\text{poly-lift } q)$

### 5.1.1 *poly-add* has desired root

**interpretation** *poly-}x\text{-minus-}y\text{-hom}*:

*comm-ring-hom poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \langle \text{proof} \rangle*

**lemma** *poly2-}x\text{-}y[simp]*:

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1}$

**shows**  $\text{poly2 } x-y \ x \ y = x - y \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *degree-poly-}x\text{-minus-}y[simp]*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{idom poly}$

**shows**  $\text{degree } (\text{poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \ p) = \text{degree } p \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-}x\text{-minus-}y\text{-pCons[simp]*:

$\text{poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \ (p\text{Cons } a \ p) = [[: a :]] + \text{poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \ p * x-y$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-poly-poly-}x\text{-minus-}y[simp]*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly}$

**shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{poly } (\text{poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \ p) \ q) \ x = \text{poly } p \ (x - \text{poly } q \ x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly2-poly-}x\text{-minus-}y[simp]*:

**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly}$

**shows**  $\text{poly2 } (\text{poly-}x\text{-minus-}y \ p) \ x \ y = \text{poly } p \ (x-y) \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation** *x-y-mult-hom*: *zero-hom-0*  $\lambda p :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly poly. } x-y * p$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *x-y-nonzero[simp]*:  $x-y \neq 0 \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *degree-x-y[simp]*:  $\text{degree } x-y = 1 \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation** *x-y-mult-hom*: *inj-comm-monoid-add-hom*  $\lambda p :: 'a :: \text{idom poly poly. } x-y * p$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation** *poly-x-minus-y-hom*: *inj-idom-hom* *poly-x-minus-y*  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-add*:

**fixes**  $p q :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly}$

**assumes**  $q0: q \neq 0$  **and**  $x: \text{poly } p x = 0$  **and**  $y: \text{poly } q y = 0$

**shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{poly-add } p q) (x+y) = 0$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 5.1.2 *poly-add* is nonzero

We first prove that *poly-lift* preserves factorization. The result will be essential also in the next section for division of algebraic numbers.

**interpretation** *poly-lift-hom*:

*unit-preserving-hom* *poly-lift*  $:: 'a :: \{\text{comm-semiring-1}, \text{semiring-no-zero-divisors}\}$   
 $\text{poly} \Rightarrow -$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation** *poly-lift-hom*:

*factor-preserving-hom* *poly-lift*  $:: 'a :: \text{idom poly} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ poly poly}$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

We now show that *poly-x-minus-y* is a factor-preserving homomorphism. This is essential for this section. This is easy since *poly-x-minus-y* can be represented as the composition of two factor-preserving homomorphisms.

**lemma** *poly-x-minus-y-as-comp*:  $\text{poly-x-minus-y} = (\lambda p. p \circ_p x-y) \circ \text{poly-lift}$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**context** *idom-isom* **begin**

**sublocale** *comm-semiring-isom*  $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**end**

**interpretation** *poly-x-minus-y-hom*:

*factor-preserving-hom* *poly-x-minus-y*  $:: 'a :: \text{idom poly} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ poly poly}$

$\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Now we show that results of *poly-x-minus-y* and *poly-lift* are coprime.

**lemma** *poly-y-x-const[simp]*:  $\text{poly-y-x } [[:a:]] = [[:a:]] \langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**context begin**

**private abbreviation**  $y-x == [[: 0, -1 :], 1 :]$

**lemma**  $poly-y-x-x-y[simp]$ :  $poly-y-x x-y = y-x$   $\langle proof \rangle$  **lemma**  $y-x[simp]$ : **fixes**  $x :: 'a :: comm-ring-1$  **shows**  $poly2 y-x x y = y - x$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$  **definition**  $poly-y-minus-x p \equiv poly-lift p \circ_p y-x$

**private lemma**  $poly-y-minus-x-0[simp]$ :  $poly-y-minus-x 0 = 0$   $\langle proof \rangle$  **lemma**  $poly-y-minus-x-pCons[simp]$ :  
 $poly-y-minus-x (pCons a p) = [[: a :]] + poly-y-minus-x p * y-x$   $\langle proof \rangle$  **lemma**  $poly-y-x-poly-x-minus-y$ :  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: idom poly$   
**shows**  $poly-y-x (poly-x-minus-y p) = poly-y-minus-x p$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $degree-poly-y-minus-x[simp]$ :  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: idom poly$   
**shows**  $degree (poly-y-x (poly-x-minus-y p)) = degree p$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**end**

**lemma**  $dvd-all-coeffs-iff$ :  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: comm-semiring-1$   
**shows**  $(\forall pi \in set (coeffs p). x dvd pi) \longleftrightarrow (\forall i. x dvd coeff p i)$  **(is ?l = ?r)**  
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $primitive-imp-no-constant-factor$ :  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \{comm-semiring-1, semiring-no-zero-divisors\} poly$   
**assumes**  $pr$ :  $primitive p$  **and**  $F$ :  $mset-factors F p$  **and**  $fF$ :  $f \in \# F$   
**shows**  $degree f \neq 0$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $coprime-poly-x-minus-y-poly-lift$ :  
**fixes**  $p q :: 'a :: ufd poly$   
**assumes**  $degp$ :  $degree p > 0$  **and**  $degq$ :  $degree q > 0$   
**and**  $pr$ :  $primitive p$   
**shows**  $coprime (poly-x-minus-y p) (poly-lift q)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $poly-add-nonzero$ :  
**fixes**  $p q :: 'a :: ufd poly$   
**assumes**  $p0$ :  $p \neq 0$  **and**  $q0$ :  $q \neq 0$  **and**  $x$ :  $poly p x = 0$  **and**  $y$ :  $poly q y = 0$   
**and**  $pr$ :  $primitive p$   
**shows**  $poly-add p q \neq 0$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

### 5.1.3 Summary for addition

Now we lift the results to one that uses *ipoly*, by showing some homomorphism lemmas.

**lemma** (in *comm-ring-hom*) *map-poly-x-minus-y*:  
 $map\text{-}poly\ (map\text{-}poly\ hom)\ (poly\text{-}x\text{-}minus\text{-}y\ p) = poly\text{-}x\text{-}minus\text{-}y\ (map\text{-}poly\ hom\ p)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** (in *comm-ring-hom*) *hom-poly-lift[simp]*:  
 $map\text{-}poly\ (map\text{-}poly\ hom)\ (poly\text{-}lift\ q) = poly\text{-}lift\ (map\text{-}poly\ hom\ q)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *lead-coeff-poly-x-minus-y*:  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: idom\ poly$   
**shows**  $lead\text{-}coeff\ (poly\text{-}x\text{-}minus\text{-}y\ p) = [lead\text{-}coeff\ p * ((- 1) ^ degree\ p):]$  (is ?l = ?r)  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *degree-coeff-poly-x-minus-y*:  
**fixes**  $p\ q :: 'a :: \{idom,\ semiring\text{-}char\text{-}0\}\ poly$   
**shows**  $degree\ (coeff\ (poly\text{-}x\text{-}minus\text{-}y\ p)\ i) = degree\ p - i$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *coeff-0-poly-x-minus-y [simp]*:  $coeff\ (poly\text{-}x\text{-}minus\text{-}y\ p)\ 0 = p$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** (in *idom-hom*) *poly-add-hom*:  
**assumes**  $p0: hom\ (lead\text{-}coeff\ p) \neq 0$  **and**  $q0: hom\ (lead\text{-}coeff\ q) \neq 0$   
**shows**  $map\text{-}poly\ hom\ (poly\text{-}add\ p\ q) = poly\text{-}add\ (map\text{-}poly\ hom\ p)\ (map\text{-}poly\ hom\ q)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma**(in *zero-hom*) *hom-lead-coeff-nonzero-imp-map-poly-hom*:  
**assumes**  $hom\ (lead\text{-}coeff\ p) \neq 0$   
**shows**  $map\text{-}poly\ hom\ p \neq 0$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *ipoly-poly-add*:  
**fixes**  $x\ y :: 'a :: idom$   
**assumes**  $p0: (of\text{-}int\ (lead\text{-}coeff\ p) :: 'a) \neq 0$  **and**  $q0: (of\text{-}int\ (lead\text{-}coeff\ q) :: 'a) \neq 0$   
**and**  $x: ipoly\ p\ x = 0$  **and**  $y: ipoly\ q\ y = 0$   
**shows**  $ipoly\ (poly\text{-}add\ p\ q)\ (x+y) = 0$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** (in *comm-monoid-gcd*) *gcd-list-eq-0-iff[simp]*:  $listgcd\ xs = 0 \longleftrightarrow (\forall x \in set\ xs.\ x = 0)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩



**lemma** *primitive-field-poly[simp]*: *primitive* ( $p :: 'a :: \text{field poly}$ )  $\longleftrightarrow p \neq 0$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *ipoly-poly-add-nonzero*:  
**fixes**  $x y :: 'a :: \text{field}$   
**assumes**  $p \neq 0$  **and**  $q \neq 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } p \ x = 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } q \ y = 0$   
**and** ( $\text{of-int (lead-coeff } p) :: 'a$ )  $\neq 0$  **and** ( $\text{of-int (lead-coeff } q) :: 'a$ )  $\neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{poly-add } p \ q \neq 0$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *represents-add*:  
**assumes**  $x$ :  $p$  *represents*  $x$  **and**  $y$ :  $q$  *represents*  $y$   
**shows** ( $\text{poly-add } p \ q$ ) *represents* ( $x + y$ )  
 <proof>

## 5.2 Division of Algebraic Numbers

**definition** *poly-x-mult-y where*  
 [code del]:  $\text{poly-x-mult-y } p \equiv (\sum i \leq \text{degree } p. \text{monom (monom (coeff } p \ i) \ i) \ i)$

**lemma** *coeff-poly-x-mult-y*:  
**shows**  $\text{coeff (poly-x-mult-y } p) \ i = \text{monom (coeff } p \ i) \ i$  (**is**  $?l = ?r$ )  
 <proof>

**lemma** *poly-x-mult-y-code[code]*:  $\text{poly-x-mult-y } p = (\text{let } cs = \text{coeffs } p$   
 $\text{in } \text{poly-of-list (map } (\lambda (i, ai). \text{monom } ai \ i) \ (\text{zip } [0 ..< \text{length } cs] \ cs)))$   
 <proof>

**definition** *poly-div :: 'a :: comm-ring-1 poly  $\Rightarrow$  'a poly  $\Rightarrow$  'a poly where*  
 $\text{poly-div } p \ q = \text{resultant (poly-x-mult-y } p) (\text{poly-lift } q)$

*poly-div* has desired roots.

**lemma** *poly2-poly-x-mult-y*:  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1 poly}$   
**shows**  $\text{poly2 (poly-x-mult-y } p) \ x \ y = \text{poly } p \ (x * y)$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *poly-div*:  
**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \text{field poly}$   
**assumes**  $q0$ :  $q \neq 0$  **and**  $x$ :  $\text{poly } p \ x = 0$  **and**  $y$ :  $\text{poly } q \ y = 0$  **and**  $y0$ :  $y \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{poly (poly-div } p \ q) \ (x/y) = 0$   
 <proof>

*poly-div* is nonzero.

**interpretation** *poly-x-mult-y-hom*:  $\text{ring-hom } \text{poly-x-mult-y} :: 'a :: \{\text{idom, ring-char-0}\}$   
 $\text{poly} \Rightarrow -$   
 <proof>

**interpretation** *poly-x-mult-y-hom*: *inj-ring-hom poly-x-mult-y :: 'a :: {idom,ring-char-0}*  
*poly*  $\Rightarrow$  -  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *degree-poly-x-mult-y[simp]*:  
**fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \{idom, ring-char-0\}$  *poly*  
**shows**  $degree (poly-x-mult-y p) = degree p$  (**is**  $?l = ?r$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**interpretation** *poly-x-mult-y-hom*: *unit-preserving-hom poly-x-mult-y :: 'a :: field-char-0*  
*poly*  $\Rightarrow$  -  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemmas** *poly-y-x-o-poly-lift = o-def[of poly-y-x poly-lift, unfolded poly-y-x-poly-lift]*

**lemma** *irreducible-dvd-degree*: **assumes** ( $f :: 'a :: field$  *poly*) *dvd g*  
*irreducible g*  
*degree f > 0*  
**shows**  $degree f = degree g$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *coprime-poly-x-mult-y-poly-lift*:  
**fixes**  $p q :: 'a :: field-char-0$  *poly*  
**assumes** *degp: degree p > 0* **and** *degq: degree q > 0*  
**and** *nz: poly p 0  $\neq$  0  $\vee$  poly q 0  $\neq$  0*  
**shows** *coprime (poly-x-mult-y p) (poly-lift q)*  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *poly-div-nonzero*:  
**fixes**  $p q :: 'a :: field-char-0$  *poly*  
**assumes** *p0: p  $\neq$  0* **and** *q0: q  $\neq$  0* **and** *x: poly p x = 0* **and** *y: poly q y = 0*  
**and** *p-0: poly p 0  $\neq$  0  $\vee$  poly q 0  $\neq$  0*  
**shows** *poly-div p q  $\neq$  0*  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

### 5.2.1 Summary for division

Now we lift the results to one that uses *ipoly*, by showing some homomorphism lemmas.

**lemma** (**in** *inj-comm-ring-hom*) *poly-x-mult-y-hom*:  
 $poly-x-mult-y (map-poly hom p) = map-poly (map-poly hom) (poly-x-mult-y p)$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** (**in** *inj-comm-ring-hom*) *poly-div-hom*:  
 $map-poly hom (poly-div p q) = poly-div (map-poly hom p) (map-poly hom q)$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *ipoly-poly-div*:  
**fixes**  $x y :: 'a :: field-char-0$

**assumes**  $q \neq 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } p \ x = 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } q \ y = 0$  **and**  $y \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly } (\text{poly-div } p \ q) \ (x/y) = 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *ipoly-poly-div-nonzero*:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}$   
**assumes**  $p \neq 0$  **and**  $q \neq 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } p \ x = 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } q \ y = 0$  **and**  $\text{poly } p \ 0 \neq 0 \vee \text{poly } q \ 0 \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{poly-div } p \ q \neq 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *represents-div*:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}$   
**assumes**  $p$  *represents*  $x$  **and**  $q$  *represents*  $y$  **and**  $\text{poly } q \ 0 \neq 0$   
**shows**  $(\text{poly-div } p \ q)$  *represents*  $(x / y)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 5.3 Multiplication of Algebraic Numbers

**definition** *poly-mult* **where**  $\text{poly-mult } p \ q \equiv \text{poly-div } p \ (\text{reflect-poly } q)$

**lemma** *represents-mult*:  
**assumes**  $px$ :  $p$  *represents*  $x$  **and**  $qy$ :  $q$  *represents*  $y$  **and**  $q-0$ :  $\text{poly } q \ 0 \neq 0$   
**shows**  $(\text{poly-mult } p \ q)$  *represents*  $(x * y)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 5.4 Summary: Closure Properties of Algebraic Numbers

**lemma** *algebraic-representsI*:  $p$  *represents*  $x \implies$  *algebraic*  $x$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-of-rat*: *algebraic*  $(\text{of-rat } x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-uminus*: *algebraic*  $x \implies$  *algebraic*  $(-x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-inverse*: *algebraic*  $x \implies$  *algebraic*  $(\text{inverse } x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-plus*: *algebraic*  $x \implies$  *algebraic*  $y \implies$  *algebraic*  $(x + y)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-div*:  
**assumes**  $x$ : *algebraic*  $x$  **and**  $y$ : *algebraic*  $y$  **shows** *algebraic*  $(x/y)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *algebraic-times*: *algebraic*  $x \implies$  *algebraic*  $y \implies$  *algebraic*  $(x * y)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma algebraic-root:**  $\text{algebraic } x \implies \text{algebraic } (\text{root } n \ x)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma algebraic-nth-root:**  $n \neq 0 \implies \text{algebraic } x \implies y^n = x \implies \text{algebraic } y$   
 ⟨proof⟩

## 5.5 More on algebraic integers

**definition poly-add-sign** ::  $\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a :: \text{comm-ring-1}$  **where**  
 $\text{poly-add-sign } m \ n = \text{signof } (\lambda i. \text{if } i < n \text{ then } m + i \text{ else if } i < m + n \text{ then } i - n \text{ else } i)$

**lemma lead-coeff-poly-add:**  
**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \{\text{idom}, \text{semiring-char-0}\}$  **poly**  
**defines**  $m \equiv \text{degree } p$  **and**  $n \equiv \text{degree } q$   
**assumes**  $\text{lead-coeff } p = 1$   $\text{lead-coeff } q = 1$   $m > 0$   $n > 0$   
**shows**  $\text{lead-coeff } (\text{poly-add } p \ q :: 'a \ \text{poly}) = \text{poly-add-sign } m \ n$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma lead-coeff-poly-mult:**  
**fixes**  $p \ q :: 'a :: \{\text{idom}, \text{ring-char-0}\}$  **poly**  
**defines**  $m \equiv \text{degree } p$  **and**  $n \equiv \text{degree } q$   
**assumes**  $\text{lead-coeff } p = 1$   $\text{lead-coeff } q = 1$   $m > 0$   $n > 0$   
**assumes**  $\text{coeff } q \ 0 \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{lead-coeff } (\text{poly-mult } p \ q :: 'a \ \text{poly}) = 1$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma algebraic-int-plus** [intro]:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}$   
**assumes**  $\text{algebraic-int } x$   $\text{algebraic-int } y$   
**shows**  $\text{algebraic-int } (x + y)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma algebraic-int-times** [intro]:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}$   
**assumes**  $\text{algebraic-int } x$   $\text{algebraic-int } y$   
**shows**  $\text{algebraic-int } (x * y)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma algebraic-int-power** [intro]:  
 $\text{algebraic-int } (x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}) \implies \text{algebraic-int } (x^n)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma algebraic-int-diff** [intro]:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}$   
**assumes**  $\text{algebraic-int } x$   $\text{algebraic-int } y$   
**shows**  $\text{algebraic-int } (x - y)$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-sum* [*intro*]:  
 $(\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies \text{algebraic-int } (f\ x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}))$   
 $\implies \text{algebraic-int } (\text{sum } f\ A)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-prod* [*intro*]:  
 $(\bigwedge x. x \in A \implies \text{algebraic-int } (f\ x :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}))$   
 $\implies \text{algebraic-int } (\text{prod } f\ A)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-nth-root-real-iff*:  
 $\text{algebraic-int } (\text{root } n\ x) \longleftrightarrow n = 0 \vee \text{algebraic-int } x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-power-iff*:  
 $\text{algebraic-int } (x \wedge^n :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}) \longleftrightarrow n = 0 \vee \text{algebraic-int } x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-power-iff'* [*simp*]:  
 $n > 0 \implies \text{algebraic-int } (x \wedge^n :: 'a :: \text{field-char-0}) \longleftrightarrow \text{algebraic-int } x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-sqrt-iff* [*simp*]:  $\text{algebraic-int } (\text{sqrt } x) \longleftrightarrow \text{algebraic-int } x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-csqrt-iff* [*simp*]:  $\text{algebraic-int } (\text{csqrt } x) \longleftrightarrow \text{algebraic-int } x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *algebraic-int-norm-complex* [*intro*]:  
**assumes**  $\text{algebraic-int } (z :: \text{complex})$   
**shows**  $\text{algebraic-int } (\text{norm } z)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**hide-const** (open)  $x\text{-}y$

**end**

## 6 Separation of Roots: Sturm

We adapt the existing theory on Sturm's theorem to work on rational numbers instead of real numbers. The reason is that we want to implement real numbers as real algebraic numbers with the help of Sturm's theorem to separate the roots. To this end, we just copy the definitions of the algorithms w.r.t. Sturm and let them be executed on rational numbers. We then prove that corresponds to a homomorphism and therefore can transfer the existing soundness results.

**theory** *Sturm-Rat*

```

imports
  Sturm-Sequences.Sturm-Theorem
  Algebraic-Numbers-Prelim
  Berlekamp-Zassenhaus.Square-Free-Int-To-Square-Free-GFp
begin

hide-const (open) UnivPoly.coeff

```

```

lemma root-primitive-part [simp]:
  fixes  $p :: 'a :: \{semiring-gcd, semiring-no-zero-divisors\}$  poly
  shows poly (primitive-part  $p$ )  $x = 0 \iff$  poly  $p$   $x = 0$ 
  <proof>

```

```

lemma irreducible-primitive-part:
  assumes irreducible  $p$  and degree  $p > 0$ 
  shows primitive-part  $p = p$ 
  <proof>

```

## 6.1 Interface for Separating Roots

For a given rational polynomial, we need to know how many real roots are in a given closed interval, and how many real roots are in an interval  $(-\infty, r]$ .

```

datatype root-info = Root-Info (l-r: rat  $\Rightarrow$  rat  $\Rightarrow$  nat) (number-root: rat  $\Rightarrow$  nat)
hide-const (open) l-r
hide-const (open) number-root

```

```

definition count-roots-interval-sf :: real poly  $\Rightarrow$  (real  $\Rightarrow$  real  $\Rightarrow$  nat)  $\times$  (real  $\Rightarrow$  nat)
where
  count-roots-interval-sf  $p =$  (let  $ps =$  sturm-squarefree  $p$ 
    in (( $\lambda$  a b. sign-changes  $ps$  a - sign-changes  $ps$  b + (if poly  $p$  a = 0 then 1 else 0)),
    ( $\lambda$  a. sign-changes-neg-inf  $ps$  - sign-changes  $ps$  a)))

```

```

definition count-roots-interval :: real poly  $\Rightarrow$  (real  $\Rightarrow$  real  $\Rightarrow$  nat)  $\times$  (real  $\Rightarrow$  nat)
where
  count-roots-interval  $p =$  (let  $ps =$  sturm  $p$ 
    in (( $\lambda$  a b. sign-changes  $ps$  a - sign-changes  $ps$  b + (if poly  $p$  a = 0 then 1 else 0)),
    ( $\lambda$  a. sign-changes-neg-inf  $ps$  - sign-changes  $ps$  a)))

```

```

lemma count-roots-interval-iff: square-free  $p \implies$  count-roots-interval  $p =$  count-roots-interval-sf  $p$ 
  <proof>

```

```

lemma count-roots-interval-sf: assumes  $p: p \neq 0$ 
  and  $cr: count-roots-interval-sf p = (cr, nr)$ 
  shows  $a \leq b \implies cr\ a\ b = (card \{x. a \leq x \wedge x \leq b \wedge poly\ p\ x = 0\})$ 

```

$nr\ a = \text{card } \{x. x \leq a \wedge \text{poly } p\ x = 0\}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *count-roots-interval*: **assumes**  $cr$ : *count-roots-interval*  $p = (cr, nr)$   
**and**  $sf$ : *square-free*  $p$   
**shows**  $a \leq b \implies cr\ a\ b = (\text{card } \{x. a \leq x \wedge x \leq b \wedge \text{poly } p\ x = 0\})$   
 $nr\ a = \text{card } \{x. x \leq a \wedge \text{poly } p\ x = 0\}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *root-cond* ::  $\text{int poly} \times \text{rat} \times \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{real} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
 $root\text{-}cond\ plr\ x = (\text{case } plr\ \text{of } (p, l, r) \Rightarrow \text{of-rat } l \leq x \wedge x \leq \text{of-rat } r \wedge \text{ipoly } p\ x = 0)$

**definition** *root-info-cond* ::  $\text{root-info} \Rightarrow \text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
 $root\text{-}info\text{-}cond\ ri\ p \equiv (\forall\ a\ b. a \leq b \longrightarrow \text{root-info.l-r } ri\ a\ b = \text{card } \{x. \text{root-cond } (p, a, b)\ x\})$   
 $\wedge (\forall\ a. \text{root-info.number-root } ri\ a = \text{card } \{x. x \leq \text{real-of-rat } a \wedge \text{ipoly } p\ x = 0\})$

**lemma** *root-info-condD*:  $root\text{-}info\text{-}cond\ ri\ p \implies a \leq b \implies \text{root-info.l-r } ri\ a\ b = \text{card } \{x. \text{root-cond } (p, a, b)\ x\}$   
 $root\text{-}info\text{-}cond\ ri\ p \implies \text{root-info.number-root } ri\ a = \text{card } \{x. x \leq \text{real-of-rat } a \wedge \text{ipoly } p\ x = 0\}$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**definition** *count-roots-interval-sf-rat* ::  $\text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{root-info}$  **where**  
 $count\text{-}roots\text{-}interval\text{-}sf\text{-}rat\ p = (\text{let } pp = \text{real-of-int-poly } p;$   
 $(cr, nr) = \text{count-roots-interval-sf } pp$   
 in  $\text{Root-Info } (\lambda\ a\ b. cr\ (\text{of-rat } a)\ (\text{of-rat } b)) (\lambda\ a. nr\ (\text{of-rat } a))$ )

**definition** *count-roots-interval-rat* ::  $\text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{root-info}$  **where**  
 [code del]:  $count\text{-}roots\text{-}interval\text{-}rat\ p = (\text{let } pp = \text{real-of-int-poly } p;$   
 $(cr, nr) = \text{count-roots-interval } pp$   
 in  $\text{Root-Info } (\lambda\ a\ b. cr\ (\text{of-rat } a)\ (\text{of-rat } b)) (\lambda\ a. nr\ (\text{of-rat } a))$ )

**definition** *count-roots-rat* ::  $\text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{nat}$  **where**  
 [code del]:  $count\text{-}roots\text{-}rat\ p = (\text{count-roots } (\text{real-of-int-poly } p))$

**lemma** *count-roots-interval-sf-rat*: **assumes**  $p$ :  $p \neq 0$   
**shows**  $root\text{-}info\text{-}cond\ (\text{count-roots-interval-sf-rat } p)\ p$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *of-rat-of-int-poly*:  $\text{map-poly } \text{of-rat } (\text{of-int-poly } p) = \text{of-int-poly } p$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *square-free-of-int-poly*: **assumes**  $square\text{-}free\ p$   
**shows**  $square\text{-}free\ (\text{of-int-poly } p :: 'a :: \{\text{field-gcd}, \text{field-char-0}\}\ \text{poly})$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *count-roots-interval-rat*: **assumes** *sf*: square-free *p*  
**shows** *root-info-cond* (*count-roots-interval-rat* *p*) *p*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *count-roots-rat*: *count-roots-rat* *p* = *card* {*x*. *ipoly* *p* *x* = (0 :: *real*)}  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

## 6.2 Implementing Sturm on Rational Polynomials

**function** *sturm-aux-rat* **where**  
*sturm-aux-rat* (*p* :: *rat poly*) *q* =  
 (if *degree* *q* = 0 then [*p*,*q*] else *p* # *sturm-aux-rat* *q* (-(*p mod q*)))  
 ⟨*proof*⟩  
**termination** ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *sturm-aux-rat*: *sturm-aux* (*real-of-rat-poly* *p*) (*real-of-rat-poly* *q*) =  
*map* *real-of-rat-poly* (*sturm-aux-rat* *p* *q*)  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *sturm-rat* **where** *sturm-rat* *p* = *sturm-aux-rat* *p* (*pderiv* *p*)

**lemma** *sturm-rat*: *sturm* (*real-of-rat-poly* *p*) = *map* *real-of-rat-poly* (*sturm-rat* *p*)  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *poly-number-rootat* :: *rat poly* ⇒ *rat* **where**  
*poly-number-rootat* *p* ≡ *sgn* (*coeff* *p* (*degree* *p*))

**definition** *poly-neg-number-rootat* :: *rat poly* ⇒ *rat* **where**  
*poly-neg-number-rootat* *p* ≡ if even (*degree* *p*) then *sgn* (*coeff* *p* (*degree* *p*))  
 else -*sgn* (*coeff* *p* (*degree* *p*))

**lemma** *poly-number-rootat*: *poly-inf* (*real-of-rat-poly* *p*) = *real-of-rat* (*poly-number-rootat* *p*)  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *poly-neg-number-rootat*: *poly-neg-inf* (*real-of-rat-poly* *p*) = *real-of-rat* (*poly-neg-number-rootat* *p*)  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *sign-changes-rat* **where**  
*sign-changes-rat* *ps* (*x*::*rat*) =  
*length* (*remdups-adj* (*filter* ( $\lambda x. x \neq 0$ ) (*map* ( $\lambda p. \text{sgn} (\text{poly } p \ x)$ ) *ps*))) - 1

**definition** *sign-changes-number-rootat* **where**  
*sign-changes-number-rootat* *ps* =  
*length* (*remdups-adj* (*filter* ( $\lambda x. x \neq 0$ ) (*map* *poly-number-rootat* *ps*))) - 1



**definition** *sign-changes-neg-number-rootat* **where**

*sign-changes-neg-number-rootat*  $ps =$   
 $length (remdups-adj (filter (\lambda x. x \neq 0) (map poly-neg-number-rootat ps))) -$   
 $1$

**lemma** *real-of-rat-list-neq*: *list-neq (map real-of-rat xs) 0*

$= map\ real-of-rat\ (list-neq\ xs\ 0)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *real-of-rat-remdups-adj*: *remdups-adj (map real-of-rat xs) = map real-of-rat (remdups-adj xs)*

$\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *sign-changes-rat*: *sign-changes (map real-of-rat-poly ps) (real-of-rat x)*

$= sign-changes-rat\ ps\ x\ (is\ ?l = ?r)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *sign-changes-neg-number-rootat*: *sign-changes-neg-inf (map real-of-rat-poly ps)*

$= sign-changes-neg-number-rootat\ ps\ (is\ ?l = ?r)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *sign-changes-number-rootat*: *sign-changes-inf (map real-of-rat-poly ps)*

$= sign-changes-number-rootat\ ps\ (is\ ?l = ?r)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *count-roots-interval-rat-code*[code]:

*count-roots-interval-rat*  $p = (let\ rp = map-poly\ rat-of-int\ p;\ ps = sturm-rat\ rp$   
 $in\ Root-Info$   
 $(\lambda\ a\ b. sign-changes-rat\ ps\ a - sign-changes-rat\ ps\ b + (if\ poly\ rp\ a = 0\ then$   
 $1\ else\ 0))$   
 $(\lambda\ a. sign-changes-neg-number-rootat\ ps - sign-changes-rat\ ps\ a))$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *count-roots-rat-code*[code]:

*count-roots-rat*  $p = (let\ rp = map-poly\ rat-of-int\ p\ in\ if\ p = 0\ then\ 0\ else\ let\ ps$   
 $= sturm-rat\ rp$   
 $in\ sign-changes-neg-number-rootat\ ps - sign-changes-number-rootat\ ps)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**hide-const** (**open**) *count-roots-interval-sf-rat*

Finally we provide an even more efficient implementation which avoids the "poly p x = 0" test, but it is restricted to irreducible polynomials.

**definition** *root-info* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *root-info* **where**

*root-info*  $p = (if\ degree\ p = 1\ then$   
 $(let\ x = Rat.Fract\ (-\ coeff\ p\ 0)\ (coeff\ p\ 1)$   
 $in\ Root-Info\ (\lambda\ l\ r. if\ l \leq x \wedge x \leq r\ then\ 1\ else\ 0))\ (\lambda\ b. if\ x \leq b\ then\ 1\ else$   
 $0))\ else$

```

    (let rp = map-poly rat-of-int p; ps = sturm-rat rp in
      Root-Info ( $\lambda$  a b. sign-changes-rat ps a - sign-changes-rat ps b)
      ( $\lambda$  a. sign-changes-neg-number-rootat ps - sign-changes-rat ps a)))

```

```

lemma root-info:
  assumes irr: irreducible p and deg: degree p > 0
  shows root-info-cond (root-info p) p
  <proof>

```

**end**

## 7 Getting Small Representative Polynomials via Factorization

In this theory we import a factorization algorithm for integer polynomials to turn a representing polynomial of some algebraic number into a list of irreducible polynomials where exactly one list element represents the same number. Moreover, we prove that the certain polynomial operations preserve irreducibility, so that no factorization is required.

```

theory Factors-of-Int-Poly
  imports
    Berlekamp-Zassenhaus.Factorize-Int-Poly
    Algebraic-Numbers-Prelim
  begin

```

```

lemma degree-of-gcd: degree (gcd q r)  $\neq$  0  $\longleftrightarrow$ 
  degree (gcd (of-int-poly q :: 'a :: {field-char-0, field-gcd} poly) (of-int-poly r))  $\neq$  0
  <proof>

```

```

definition factors-of-int-poly :: int poly  $\Rightarrow$  int poly list where
  factors-of-int-poly p = map (abs-int-poly o fst) (snd (factorize-int-poly p))

```

```

lemma factors-of-int-poly-const: assumes degree p = 0
  shows factors-of-int-poly p = []
  <proof>

```

```

lemma factors-of-int-poly:
  defines rp  $\equiv$  ipoly :: int poly  $\Rightarrow$  'a :: {field-gcd,field-char-0}  $\Rightarrow$  'a
  assumes factors-of-int-poly p = qs
  shows  $\bigwedge$  q. q  $\in$  set qs  $\Longrightarrow$  irreducible q  $\wedge$  lead-coeff q > 0  $\wedge$  degree q  $\leq$  degree
  p  $\wedge$  degree q  $\neq$  0
  p  $\neq$  0  $\Longrightarrow$  rp p x = 0  $\longleftrightarrow$  ( $\exists$  q  $\in$  set qs. rp q x = 0)
  p  $\neq$  0  $\Longrightarrow$  rp p x = 0  $\Longrightarrow$   $\exists!$  q  $\in$  set qs. rp q x = 0
  distinct qs
  <proof>

```

```

lemma factors-int-poly-represents:

```

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
**assumes**  $p: p \text{ represents } x$   
**shows**  $\exists q \in \text{set } (\text{factors-of-int-poly } p).$   
 $q \text{ represents } x \wedge \text{irreducible } q \wedge \text{lead-coeff } q > 0 \wedge \text{degree } q \leq \text{degree } p$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**corollary** *irreducible-represents-imp-degree*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
**assumes** *irreducible*  $f$  **and**  $f \text{ represents } x$  **and**  $g \text{ represents } x$   
**shows**  $\text{degree } f \leq \text{degree } g$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *irreducible-preservation*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
**assumes** *irr*: *irreducible*  $p$   
**and**  $x: p \text{ represents } x$   
**and**  $y: q \text{ represents } y$   
**and**  $\text{deg}: \text{degree } p \geq \text{degree } q$   
**and**  $f: \bigwedge q. q \text{ represents } y \implies (f \ q) \text{ represents } x \wedge \text{degree } (f \ q) \leq \text{degree } q$   
**and**  $\text{pr}: \text{primitive } q$   
**shows** *irreducible*  $q$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**declare** *irreducible-const-poly-iff* [*simp*]

**lemma** *poly-uminus-irreducible*:  
**assumes**  $p: \text{irreducible } (p :: \text{int poly})$  **and**  $\text{deg}: \text{degree } p \neq 0$   
**shows** *irreducible*  $(\text{poly-uminus } p)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *reflect-poly-irreducible*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
**assumes**  $p: \text{irreducible } p$  **and**  $x: p \text{ represents } x$  **and**  $x0: x \neq 0$   
**shows** *irreducible*  $(\text{reflect-poly } p)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-add-rat-irreducible*:  
**assumes**  $p: \text{irreducible } p$  **and**  $\text{deg}: \text{degree } p \neq 0$   
**shows** *irreducible*  $(\text{cf-pos-poly } (\text{poly-add-rat } r \ p))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-mult-rat-irreducible*:  
**assumes**  $p: \text{irreducible } p$  **and**  $\text{deg}: \text{degree } p \neq 0$  **and**  $r: r \neq 0$   
**shows** *irreducible*  $(\text{cf-pos-poly } (\text{poly-mult-rat } r \ p))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**interpretation** *coeff-lift-hom*:  
 $\text{factor-preserving-hom } \text{coeff-lift} :: 'a :: \{\text{comm-semiring-1}, \text{semiring-no-zero-divisors}\}$   
 $\implies -$

*<proof>*

**end**

## 8 The minimal polynomial of an algebraic number

**theory** *Min-Int-Poly*

**imports**

*Algebraic-Numbers-Prelim*

**begin**

Given an algebraic number  $x$  in a field, the minimal polynomial is the unique irreducible integer polynomial with positive leading coefficient that has  $x$  as a root.

Note that we assume characteristic 0 since the material upon which all of this builds also assumes it.

**definition** *min-int-poly* :: 'a :: field-char-0  $\Rightarrow$  int poly **where**

*min-int-poly*  $x =$

(if algebraic  $x$  then *THE*  $p$ .  $p$  represents  $x \wedge$  irreducible  $p \wedge$  lead-coeff  $p > 0$   
else  $[:0, 1:]$ )

**lemma**

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{field-char-0, field-gcd\}$

**shows** *min-int-poly-represents* [intro]: algebraic  $x \implies$  *min-int-poly*  $x$  represents  $x$

**and** *min-int-poly-irreducible* [intro]: irreducible (*min-int-poly*  $x$ )

**and** *lead-coeff-min-int-poly-pos*: lead-coeff (*min-int-poly*  $x$ )  $> 0$

*<proof>*

**lemma**

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{field-char-0, field-gcd\}$

**shows** *degree-min-int-poly-pos* [intro]: degree (*min-int-poly*  $x$ )  $> 0$

**and** *degree-min-int-poly-nonzero* [simp]: degree (*min-int-poly*  $x$ )  $\neq 0$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-primitive* [intro]:

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{field-char-0, field-gcd\}$

**shows** *primitive* (*min-int-poly*  $x$ )

*<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-content* [simp]:

**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{field-char-0, field-gcd\}$

**shows** *content* (*min-int-poly*  $x$ ) = 1

*<proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-min-int-poly* [simp]:

algebraic  $x \implies$  *ipoly* (*min-int-poly*  $x$ ) ( $x :: 'a :: \{field-gcd, field-char-0\}$ ) = 0

*<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-nonzero* [*simp*]:  
 **fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
 **shows**  $\text{min-int-poly } x \neq 0$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-normalize* [*simp*]:  
 **fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
 **shows**  $\text{normalize } (\text{min-int-poly } x) = \text{min-int-poly } x$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-prime-elem* [*intro*]:  
 **fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
 **shows**  $\text{prime-elem } (\text{min-int-poly } x)$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-prime* [*intro*]:  
 **fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
 **shows**  $\text{prime } (\text{min-int-poly } x)$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-unique*:  
 **fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
 **assumes**  $p$  represents  $x$  irreducible  $p$  lead-coeff  $p > 0$   
 **shows**  $\text{min-int-poly } x = p$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-of-int* [*simp*]:  
  $\text{min-int-poly } (\text{of-int } n :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}) = [:-\text{of-int } n, 1:]$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-of-nat* [*simp*]:  
  $\text{min-int-poly } (\text{of-nat } n :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}) = [:-\text{of-nat } n, 1:]$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-0* [*simp*]:  $\text{min-int-poly } (0 :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}) = [:-0, 1:]$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-1* [*simp*]:  $\text{min-int-poly } (1 :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}) = [:-1, 1:]$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *poly-min-int-poly-0-eq-0-iff* [*simp*]:  
 **fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
 **assumes** algebraic  $x$   
 **shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{min-int-poly } x) 0 = 0 \longleftrightarrow x = 0$   
 *<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-eqI*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\}$   
**assumes**  $p$  represents  $x$  irreducible  $p$  lead-coeff  $p \geq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{min-int-poly } x = p$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Implementation for real and rational numbers

**lemma** *min-int-poly-of-rat*:  $\text{min-int-poly } (\text{of-rat } r :: 'a :: \{\text{field-char-0}, \text{field-gcd}\})$   
 $= \text{poly-rat } r$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *min-int-poly-real* ::  $\text{real} \Rightarrow \text{int poly}$  **where**  
 $[\text{simp}]: \text{min-int-poly-real} = \text{min-int-poly}$

**lemma** *min-int-poly-real-code-unfold* [*code-unfold*]:  $\text{min-int-poly} = \text{min-int-poly-real}$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *min-int-poly-real-basic-impl*[*code*]:  $\text{min-int-poly-real } (\text{real-of-rat } x) = \text{poly-rat } x$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *min-int-poly-rat-code-unfold* [*code-unfold*]:  $\text{min-int-poly} = \text{poly-rat}$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**end**

## 9 Real Algebraic Numbers

Whereas we previously only proved the closure properties of algebraic numbers, this theory adds the numeric computations that are required to separate the roots, and to pick unique representatives of algebraic numbers.

The development is split into three major parts. First, an ambiguous representation of algebraic numbers is used, afterwards another layer is used with special treatment of rational numbers which still does not admit unique representatives, and finally, a quotient type is created modulo the equivalence.

The theory also contains a code-setup to implement real numbers via real algebraic numbers.

The results are taken from the textbook [2, pages 329ff].

**theory** *Real-Algebraic-Numbers*

**imports**

*Abstract-Rewriting.SN-Order-Carrier*

*Deriving.Compare-Rat*

*Deriving.Compare-Real*

*Jordan-Normal-Form.Gauss-Jordan-IArray-Impl*

*Algebraic-Numbers*  
*Sturm-Rat*  
*Factors-of-Int-Poly*  
*Min-Int-Poly*  
**begin**

For algebraic numbers, it turned out that *gcd-int-poly* is not preferable to the default implementation of *gcd*, which just implements Collin's primitive remainder sequence.

**declare** *gcd-int-poly-code*[*code-unfold del*]

**lemma** *ex1-imp-Collect-singleton*:  $(\exists!x. P x) \wedge P x \longleftrightarrow \text{Collect } P = \{x\}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *ex1-Collect-singleton*[*consumes 2*]:  
**assumes**  $\exists!x. P x$  **and**  $P x$  **and**  $\text{Collect } P = \{x\} \implies$  *thesis* **shows** *thesis*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *ex1-iff-Collect-singleton*:  $P x \implies (\exists!x. P x) \longleftrightarrow \text{Collect } P = \{x\}$   
*<proof>*

**context**

**fixes** *f*

**assumes** *bij*: *bij f*

**begin**

**lemma** *bij-imp-ex1-iff*:  $(\exists!x. P (f x)) \longleftrightarrow (\exists!y. P y)$  (**is** *?l = ?r*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *bij-ex1-imp-the-shift*:

**assumes** *ex1*:  $\exists!y. P y$  **shows**  $(\text{THE } x. P (f x)) = \text{Hilbert-Choice.inv } f (\text{THE } y. P y)$  (**is** *?l = ?r*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *bij-imp-Collect-image*:  $\{x. P (f x)\} = \text{Hilbert-Choice.inv } f \{y. P y\}$  (**is** *?l = ?g ' -*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *bij-imp-card-image*:  $\text{card } (f \text{ ` } X) = \text{card } X$   
*<proof>*

**end**

**lemma** *bij-imp-card*: **assumes** *bij*: *bij f* **shows**  $\text{card } \{x. P (f x)\} = \text{card } \{x. P x\}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *bij-add*: *bij*  $(\lambda x. x + y :: 'a :: \text{group-add})$  (**is** *?g1*)

**and** *bij-minus*: *bij*  $(\lambda x. x - y :: 'a)$  (**is** *?g2*)

**and** *inv-add[simp]*:  $\text{Hilbert-Choice.inv } (\lambda x. x + y) = (\lambda x. x - y)$  (**is** *?g3*)

**and** *inv-minus*[simp]: *Hilbert-Choice.inv*  $(\lambda x. x - y) = (\lambda x. x + y)$  (**is** ?g4)  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemmas** *ex1-shift*[simp] = *bij-imp-ex1-iff*[OF *bij-add*] *bij-imp-ex1-iff*[OF *bij-minus*]

**lemma** *ex1-the-shift*:

**assumes** *ex1*:  $\exists! y :: 'a :: \text{group-add. } P y$   
**shows**  $(THE\ x. P\ (x + d)) = (THE\ y. P\ y) - d$   
**and**  $(THE\ x. P\ (x - d)) = (THE\ y. P\ y) + d$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *card-shift-image*[simp]:

**shows**  $\text{card}\ ((\lambda x :: 'a :: \text{group-add. } x + d)\ 'X) = \text{card}\ X$   
**and**  $\text{card}\ ((\lambda x. x - d)\ 'X) = \text{card}\ X$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *irreducible-root-free*:

**fixes** *p* :: 'a :: {*idom,comm-ring-1*} *poly*  
**assumes** *irr*: *irreducible p* **shows** *root-free p*  
 ⟨proof⟩

## 9.1 Real Algebraic Numbers – Innermost Layer

We represent a real algebraic number  $\alpha$  by a tuple (p,l,r):  $\alpha$  is the unique root in the interval [l,r] and l and r have the same sign. We always assume that p is normalized, i.e., p is the unique irreducible and positive content-free polynomial which represents the algebraic number.

This representation clearly admits duplicate representations for the same number, e.g. (...x-3, 3,3) is equivalent to (...x-3,2,10).

### 9.1.1 Basic Definitions

**type-synonym** *real-alg-1* = *int poly*  $\times$  *rat*  $\times$  *rat*

**fun** *poly-real-alg-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly* **where** *poly-real-alg-1* (*p*,-,) = *p*

**fun** *rai-ub* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat* **where** *rai-ub* (-,.,*r*) = *r*

**fun** *rai-lb* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat* **where** *rai-lb* (-,.,) = *l*

**abbreviation** *roots-below p x*  $\equiv$   $\{y :: \text{real. } y \leq x \wedge \text{ipoly } p\ y = 0\}$

**abbreviation**(*input*) *unique-root* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
*unique-root plr*  $\equiv$   $(\exists! x. \text{root-cond } plr\ x)$

**abbreviation** *the-unique-root* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real* **where**  
*the-unique-root plr*  $\equiv$   $(THE\ x. \text{root-cond } plr\ x)$

**abbreviation** *real-of-1* **where** *real-of-1*  $\equiv$  *the-unique-root*



**lemma** *root-condI*[*intro*]:  
**assumes** *of-rat (rai-lb plr) ≤ x and x ≤ of-rat (rai-ub plr) and ipoly (poly-real-alg-1 plr) x = 0*  
**shows** *root-cond plr x*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *root-condE*[*elim*]:  
**assumes** *root-cond plr x*  
**and** *of-rat (rai-lb plr) ≤ x ⇒ x ≤ of-rat (rai-ub plr) ⇒ ipoly (poly-real-alg-1 plr) x = 0 ⇒ thesis*  
**shows** *thesis*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma**  
**assumes** *ur: unique-root plr*  
**defines** *x ≡ the-unique-root plr and p ≡ poly-real-alg-1 plr and l ≡ rai-lb plr*  
**and** *r ≡ rai-ub plr*  
**shows** *unique-rootD: of-rat l ≤ x x ≤ of-rat r ipoly p x = 0 root-cond plr x*  
*x = y ⟷ root-cond plr y y = x ⟷ root-cond plr y*  
**and** *the-unique-root-eqI: root-cond plr y ⇒ y = x root-cond plr y ⇒ x = y*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *unique-rootE*:  
**assumes** *ur: unique-root plr*  
**defines** *x ≡ the-unique-root plr and p ≡ poly-real-alg-1 plr and l ≡ rai-lb plr*  
**and** *r ≡ rai-ub plr*  
**assumes** *main: of-rat l ≤ x ⇒ x ≤ of-rat r ⇒ ipoly p x = 0 ⇒ root-cond plr x ⇒*  
*(∧ y. x = y ⟷ root-cond plr y) ⇒ (∧ y. y = x ⟷ root-cond plr y) ⇒*  
*thesis*  
**shows** *thesis* ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *unique-rootI*:  
**assumes** *∧ y. root-cond plr y ⇒ x = y root-cond plr x*  
**shows** *unique-root plr* ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *poly-cond* :: *int poly ⇒ bool* **where**  
*poly-cond p = (lead-coeff p > 0 ∧ irreducible p)*

**lemma** *poly-condI*[*intro*]:  
**assumes** *lead-coeff p > 0 and irreducible p* **shows** *poly-cond p* ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *poly-condD*:  
**assumes** *poly-cond p*  
**shows** *irreducible p and lead-coeff p > 0 and root-free p and square-free p and*  
*p ≠ 0*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *poly-condE*[*elim*]:

**assumes** *poly-cond*  $p$   
**and** *irreducible*  $p \implies \text{lead-coeff } p > 0 \implies \text{root-free } p \implies \text{square-free } p \implies$   
 $p \neq 0 \implies \text{thesis}$   
**shows** *thesis*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *invariant-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
*invariant-1*  $\text{tup} \equiv \text{case } \text{tup} \text{ of } (p,l,r) \Rightarrow$   
*unique-root*  $(p,l,r) \wedge \text{sgn } l = \text{sgn } r \wedge \text{poly-cond } p$

**lemma** *invariant-1I*:

**assumes** *unique-root*  $\text{plr}$  **and**  $\text{sgn } (\text{rai-lb } \text{plr}) = \text{sgn } (\text{rai-ub } \text{plr})$  **and** *poly-cond*  
*(poly-real-alg-1*  $\text{plr}$ )  
**shows** *invariant-1*  $\text{plr}$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma**

**assumes** *invariant-1*  $\text{plr}$   
**defines**  $x \equiv \text{the-unique-root } \text{plr}$  **and**  $p \equiv \text{poly-real-alg-1 } \text{plr}$  **and**  $l \equiv \text{rai-lb } \text{plr}$   
**and**  $r \equiv \text{rai-ub } \text{plr}$   
**shows** *invariant-1D*: *root-cond*  $\text{plr } x$   
 $\text{sgn } l = \text{sgn } r \text{sgn } x = \text{of-rat } (\text{sgn } r) \text{ unique-root } \text{plr } \text{poly-cond } p \text{ degree } p > 0$   
*primitive*  $p$   
**and** *invariant-1-root-cond*:  $\bigwedge y. \text{root-cond } \text{plr } y \longleftrightarrow y = x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1E[elim]*:

**assumes** *invariant-1*  $\text{plr}$   
**defines**  $x \equiv \text{the-unique-root } \text{plr}$  **and**  $p \equiv \text{poly-real-alg-1 } \text{plr}$  **and**  $l \equiv \text{rai-lb } \text{plr}$   
**and**  $r \equiv \text{rai-ub } \text{plr}$   
**assumes** *main*: *root-cond*  $\text{plr } x \implies$   
 $\text{sgn } l = \text{sgn } r \implies \text{sgn } x = \text{of-rat } (\text{sgn } r) \implies \text{unique-root } \text{plr} \implies \text{poly-cond } p$   
 $\implies \text{degree } p > 0 \implies$   
*primitive*  $p \implies \text{thesis}$   
**shows** *thesis* ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1-realI*:

**fixes**  $\text{plr} :: \text{real-alg-1}$   
**defines**  $p \equiv \text{poly-real-alg-1 } \text{plr}$  **and**  $l \equiv \text{rai-lb } \text{plr}$  **and**  $r \equiv \text{rai-ub } \text{plr}$   
**assumes**  $x$ : *root-cond*  $\text{plr } x$  **and**  $\text{sgn } l = \text{sgn } r$   
**and**  $ur$ : *unique-root*  $\text{plr}$   
**and** *poly-cond*  $p$   
**shows** *invariant-1*  $\text{plr} \wedge \text{real-of-1 } \text{plr} = x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *real-of-1-0*:

**assumes** *invariant-1*  $(p,l,r)$   
**shows** [*simp*]: *the-unique-root*  $(p,l,r) = 0 \longleftrightarrow r = 0$

**and** [*dest*]:  $l = 0 \implies r = 0$   
**and** [*intro*]:  $r = 0 \implies l = 0$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1-pos*: **assumes** *rc*: *invariant-1* (*p*,*l*,*r*)  
**shows** [*simp*]:*the-unique-root* (*p*,*l*,*r*)  $> 0 \longleftrightarrow r > 0$  (**is**  $?x > 0 \longleftrightarrow -$ )  
**and** [*simp*]:*the-unique-root* (*p*,*l*,*r*)  $< 0 \longleftrightarrow r < 0$   
**and** [*simp*]:*the-unique-root* (*p*,*l*,*r*)  $\leq 0 \longleftrightarrow r \leq 0$   
**and** [*simp*]:*the-unique-root* (*p*,*l*,*r*)  $\geq 0 \longleftrightarrow r \geq 0$   
**and** [*intro*]:  $r > 0 \implies l > 0$   
**and** [*dest*]:  $l > 0 \implies r > 0$   
**and** [*intro*]:  $r < 0 \implies l < 0$   
**and** [*dest*]:  $l < 0 \implies r < 0$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *invariant-1-2* **where**  
*invariant-1-2* *rai*  $\equiv$  *invariant-1* *rai*  $\wedge$  *degree* (*poly-real-alg-1* *rai*)  $> 1$

**definition** *poly-cond2* **where** *poly-cond2* *p*  $\equiv$  *poly-cond* *p*  $\wedge$  *degree* *p*  $> 1$

**lemma** *poly-cond2I*[*intro!*]: *poly-cond* *p*  $\implies$  *degree* *p*  $> 1 \implies$  *poly-cond2* *p* ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *poly-cond2D*:  
**assumes** *poly-cond2* *p*  
**shows** *poly-cond* *p* **and** *degree* *p*  $> 1$  ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *poly-cond2E*[*elim!*]:  
**assumes** *poly-cond2* *p* **and** *poly-cond* *p*  $\implies$  *degree* *p*  $> 1 \implies$  *thesis* **shows** *thesis*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1-2-poly-cond2*: *invariant-1-2* *rai*  $\implies$  *poly-cond2* (*poly-real-alg-1* *rai*)  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1-2I*[*intro!*]:  
**assumes** *invariant-1* *rai* **and** *degree* (*poly-real-alg-1* *rai*)  $> 1$  **shows** *invariant-1-2* *rai*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1-2E*[*elim!*]:  
**assumes** *invariant-1-2* *rai*  
**and** *invariant-1* *rai*  $\implies$  *degree* (*poly-real-alg-1* *rai*)  $> 1 \implies$  *thesis*  
**shows** *thesis* ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1-2-realI*:  
**fixes** *plr* :: *real-alg-1*  
**defines** *p*  $\equiv$  *poly-real-alg-1* *plr* **and** *l*  $\equiv$  *rai-lb* *plr* **and** *r*  $\equiv$  *rai-ub* *plr*

**assumes**  $x$ : *root-cond plr*  $x$  **and**  $sgn$ :  $sgn\ l = sgn\ r$  **and**  $ur$ : *unique-root plr* **and**  
 $p$ : *poly-cond2*  $p$   
**shows**  $invariant-1-2\ plr \wedge real-of-1\ plr = x$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

## 9.2 Real Algebraic Numbers = Rational + Irrational Real Algebraic Numbers

In the next representation of real algebraic numbers, we distinguish between rational and irrational numbers. The advantage is that whenever we only work on rational numbers, there is not much overhead involved in comparison to the existing implementation of real numbers which just supports the rational numbers. For irrational numbers we additionally store the number of the root, counting from left to right. For instance  $-\sqrt{2}$  and  $\sqrt{2}$  would be root number 1 and 2 of  $x^2 - 2$ .

### 9.2.1 Definitions and Algorithms on Raw Type

**datatype**  $real-alg-2 = Rational\ rat \mid Irrational\ nat\ real-alg-1$

**fun**  $invariant-2 :: real-alg-2 \Rightarrow bool$  **where**  
 $invariant-2\ (Irrational\ n\ rai) = (invariant-1-2\ rai$   
 $\wedge n = card(\text{roots-below}\ (poly-real-alg-1\ rai)\ (real-of-1\ rai)))$   
 $\mid invariant-2\ (Rational\ r) = True$

**fun**  $real-of-2 :: real-alg-2 \Rightarrow real$  **where**  
 $real-of-2\ (Rational\ r) = of-rat\ r$   
 $\mid real-of-2\ (Irrational\ n\ rai) = real-of-1\ rai$

**definition**  $of-rat-2 :: rat \Rightarrow real-alg-2$  **where**  
 $[code-unfold]: of-rat-2 = Rational$

**lemma**  $of-rat-2: real-of-2\ (of-rat-2\ x) = of-rat\ x$   $invariant-2\ (of-rat-2\ x)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**typedef**  $real-alg-3 = Collect\ invariant-2$   
**morphisms**  $rep-real-alg-3\ Real-Alg-Invariant$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**setup-lifting**  $type-definition-real-alg-3$

**lift-definition**  $real-of-3 :: real-alg-3 \Rightarrow real$  **is**  $real-of-2$   $\langle proof \rangle$

### 9.2.2 Definitions and Algorithms on Quotient Type

**quotient-type**  $real-alg = real-alg-3 / \lambda x\ y. real-of-3\ x = real-of-3\ y$

**morphisms** *rep-real-alg Real-Alg-Quotient*  
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *real-of :: real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  real is real-of-3 <proof>*

**lemma** *real-of-inj: (real-of x = real-of y) = (x = y)*  
*<proof>*

### 9.2.3 Sign

**definition** *sgn-1 :: real-alg-1  $\Rightarrow$  rat where*  
*sgn-1 x = sgn (rai-ub x)*

**lemma** *sgn-1: invariant-1 x  $\Longrightarrow$  real-of-rat (sgn-1 x) = sgn (real-of-1 x)*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *sgn-1-inj: invariant-1 x  $\Longrightarrow$  invariant-1 y  $\Longrightarrow$  real-of-1 x = real-of-1 y  $\Longrightarrow$*   
*sgn-1 x = sgn-1 y*  
*<proof>*

### 9.2.4 Normalization: Bounds Close Together

**lemma** *unique-root-lr: assumes ur: unique-root plr shows rai-lb plr  $\leq$  rai-ub plr*  
*(is ?l  $\leq$  ?r)*  
*<proof>*

**locale** *map-poly-zero-hom-0 = base: zero-hom-0*

**begin**

**sublocale** *zero-hom-0 map-poly hom <proof>*

**end**

**interpretation** *of-int-poly-hom:*

*map-poly-zero-hom-0 of-int :: int  $\Rightarrow$  'a :: {ring-1, ring-char-0} <proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-roots-finite: p  $\neq$  0  $\Longrightarrow$  finite {x :: 'a :: {idom, ring-char-0}. ipoly p*  
*x = 0}*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *roots-below-the-unique-root:*

**assumes** *ur: unique-root (p,l,r)*

**shows** *roots-below p (the-unique-root (p,l,r)) = roots-below p (of-rat r) (is roots-below*  
*p ?x = -)*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *unique-root-sub-interval:*

**assumes** *ur: unique-root (p,l,r)*

**and** *rc: root-cond (p,l',r') (the-unique-root (p,l,r))*

**and** *between: l  $\leq$  l' r'  $\leq$  r*

**shows** *unique-root (p,l',r')*

**and** *the-unique-root*  $(p, l', r') = \text{the-unique-root } (p, l, r)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *invariant-1-sub-interval*:

**assumes** *rc*: *invariant-1*  $(p, l, r)$

**and** *sub*: *root-cond*  $(p, l', r')$  (*the-unique-root*  $(p, l, r)$ )

**and** *between*:  $l \leq l' \wedge r' \leq r$

**shows** *invariant-1*  $(p, l', r')$  **and** *real-of-1*  $(p, l', r') = \text{real-of-1 } (p, l, r)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *root-sign-change*: **assumes**

*p0*: *poly*  $(p::\text{real poly}) \ x = 0$  **and**

*pd-ne0*: *poly*  $(\text{pderiv } p) \ x \neq 0$

**obtains** *d* **where**

$0 < d$

$\text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x - d)) \neq \text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x + d))$

$\text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x - d)) \neq 0$

$0 \neq \text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x + d))$

$\forall d' > 0. \ d' \leq d \longrightarrow \text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x + d')) = \text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x + d)) \wedge \text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x - d')) = \text{sgn } (\text{poly } p \ (x - d))$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *rational-root-free-degree-iff*: **assumes** *rf*: *root-free*  $(\text{map-poly rat-of-int } p)$

**and** *rt*: *ipoly*  $p \ x = 0$

**shows**  $(x \in \mathbb{Q}) = (\text{degree } p = 1)$

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *rational-poly-cond-iff*: **assumes** *poly-cond*  $p$  **and** *ipoly*  $p \ x = 0$  **and** *degree*  $p > 1$

**shows**  $(x \in \mathbb{Q}) = (\text{degree } p = 1)$

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *poly-cond-degree-gt-1*: **assumes** *poly-cond*  $p$  *degree*  $p > 1$  *ipoly*  $p \ x = 0$

**shows**  $x \notin \mathbb{Q}$

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *poly-cond2-no-rat-root*: **assumes** *poly-cond2*  $p$

**shows** *ipoly*  $p \ (\text{real-of-rat } x) \neq 0$

⟨*proof*⟩

**context**

**fixes**  $p :: \text{int poly}$

**and**  $x :: \text{rat}$

**begin**

**lemma** *gt-rat-sign-change-square-free*:

**assumes** *ur*: *unique-root*  $plr$

**defines**  $p \equiv \text{poly-real-alg-1 } plr$  **and**  $l \equiv \text{rai-lb } plr$  **and**  $r \equiv \text{rai-ub } plr$

**assumes** *sf*: *square-free*  $p$  **and** *in-interval*:  $l \leq y \leq r$

**and**  $py0$ :  $ipoly\ p\ y \neq 0$  **and**  $pr0$ :  $ipoly\ p\ r \neq 0$   
**shows**  $(sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ y) = sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ r)) = (of-rat\ y > the-unique-root\ plr)$  **(is**  
 $?gt = -)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $gt-rat-sign-change$ :

**assumes**  $ur$ :  $unique-root\ plr$   
**defines**  $p \equiv poly-real-alg-1\ plr$  **and**  $l \equiv rai-lb\ plr$  **and**  $r \equiv rai-ub\ plr$   
**assumes**  $p$ :  $poly-cond2\ p$  **and**  $in-interval$ :  $l \leq y\ y \leq r$   
**shows**  $(sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ y) = sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ r)) = (of-rat\ y > the-unique-root\ plr)$  **(is**  
 $?gt = -)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition**  $tighten-poly-bounds$  ::  $rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow rat \times rat \times rat$  **where**  
 $tighten-poly-bounds\ l\ r\ sr = (let\ m = (l + r) / 2; sm = sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ m)$  **in**  
 $if\ sm = sr$   
 $then\ (l,m,sm)$  **else**  $(m,r,sr))$

**lemma**  $tighten-poly-bounds$ : **assumes**  $res$ :  $tighten-poly-bounds\ l\ r\ sr = (l',r',sr')$   
**and**  $ur$ :  $unique-root\ (p,l,r)$   
**and**  $p$ :  $poly-cond2\ p$   
**and**  $sr$ :  $sr = sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ r)$   
**shows**  $root-cond\ (p,l',r')$   $(the-unique-root\ (p,l,r))\ l \leq l'\ l' \leq r'\ r' \leq r$   
 $(r' - l') = (r - l) / 2$   $sr' = sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ r')$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**partial-function**  $(tailrec)$   $tighten-poly-bounds-epsilon$  ::  $rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow rat \times$   
 $rat \times rat$  **where**  
 $[code]$ :  $tighten-poly-bounds-epsilon\ l\ r\ sr = (if\ r - l \leq x$  **then**  $(l,r,sr)$  **else**  
 $(case\ tighten-poly-bounds\ l\ r\ sr$  **of**  $(l',r',sr') \Rightarrow tighten-poly-bounds-epsilon\ l'\ r'$   
 $sr'))$

**partial-function**  $(tailrec)$   $tighten-poly-bounds-for-x$  ::  $rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow$   
 $rat \times rat \times rat$  **where**  
 $[code]$ :  $tighten-poly-bounds-for-x\ l\ r\ sr = (if\ x < l \vee r < x$  **then**  $(l, r, sr)$  **else**  
 $(case\ tighten-poly-bounds\ l\ r\ sr$  **of**  $(l',r',sr') \Rightarrow tighten-poly-bounds-for-x\ l'\ r'$   
 $sr'))$

**lemma**  $tighten-poly-bounds-epsilon$ :

**assumes**  $ur$ :  $unique-root\ (p,l,r)$   
**defines**  $u$ :  $u \equiv the-unique-root\ (p,l,r)$   
**assumes**  $p$ :  $poly-cond2\ p$   
**and**  $res$ :  $tighten-poly-bounds-epsilon\ l\ r\ sr = (l',r',sr')$   
**and**  $sr$ :  $sr = sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ r)$   
**and**  $x$ :  $x > 0$   
**shows**  $l \leq l'\ r' \leq r$   $root-cond\ (p,l',r')$   $u\ r' - l' \leq x$   $sr' = sgn\ (ipoly\ p\ r')$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma**  $tighten-poly-bounds-for-x$ :

**assumes**  $ur$ : *unique-root*  $(p,l,r)$   
**defines**  $u$ :  $u \equiv \text{the-unique-root } (p,l,r)$   
**assumes**  $p$ : *poly-cond2*  $p$   
**and**  $res$ : *tighten-poly-bounds-for-x*  $l r sr = (l',r',sr')$   
**and**  $sr$ :  $sr = \text{sgn } (\text{ipoly } p r)$   
**shows**  $l \leq l' \wedge l' \leq r' \wedge r' \leq r$  *root-cond*  $(p,l',r')$   $u \neg (l' \leq x \wedge x \leq r')$   $sr' = \text{sgn}$   
 $(\text{ipoly } p r')$  *unique-root*  $(p,l',r')$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**end**

**definition** *real-alg-precision* :: *rat* **where**  
*real-alg-precision*  $\equiv \text{Rat.Fract } 1 \ 2$

**lemma** *real-alg-precision*: *real-alg-precision*  $> 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *normalize-bounds-1-main* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1* **where**  
*normalize-bounds-1-main*  $eps \ rai = (\text{case } rai \text{ of } (p,l,r) \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{let } (l',r',sr') = \text{tighten-poly-bounds-epsilon } p \ eps \ l \ r \ (\text{sgn } (\text{ipoly } p \ r));$   
 $fr = \text{rat-of-int } (\text{floor } r');$   
 $(l'',r'',-) = \text{tighten-poly-bounds-for-x } p \ fr \ l' \ r' \ sr'$   
 $\text{in } (p,l'',r''))$

**definition** *normalize-bounds-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1* **where**  
*normalize-bounds-1*  $= (\text{normalize-bounds-1-main } \text{real-alg-precision})$

**context**

**fixes**  $p \ q$  **and**  $l \ r$  :: *rat*  
**assumes**  $cong$ :  $\bigwedge x. \text{real-of-rat } l \leq x \Longrightarrow x \leq \text{of-rat } r \Longrightarrow (\text{ipoly } p \ x = (0 ::$   
 $\text{real})) = (\text{ipoly } q \ x = 0)$   
**begin**  
**lemma** *root-cond-cong*: *root-cond*  $(p,l,r) = \text{root-cond } (q,l,r)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *the-unique-root-cong*:  
 $\text{the-unique-root } (p,l,r) = \text{the-unique-root } (q,l,r)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *unique-root-cong*:  
 $\text{unique-root } (p,l,r) = \text{unique-root } (q,l,r)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**end**

**lemma** *normalize-bounds-1-main*: **assumes**  $eps$ :  $eps > 0$  **and**  $rc$ : *invariant-1-2*  $x$   
**defines**  $y$ :  $y \equiv \text{normalize-bounds-1-main } eps \ x$   
**shows** *invariant-1-2*  $y \wedge (\text{real-of-1 } y = \text{real-of-1 } x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *normalize-bounds-1*: **assumes**  $x$ : *invariant-1-2*  $x$



**shows** *invariant-1-2* (*normalize-bounds-1*  $x$ )  $\wedge$  (*real-of-1* (*normalize-bounds-1*  $x$ )  
 $=$  *real-of-1*  $x$ )  
 <proof>

**lemma** *normalize-bound-1-poly*: *poly-real-alg-1* (*normalize-bounds-1*  $rai$ ) = *poly-real-alg-1*  
 $rai$   
 <proof>

**definition** *real-alg-2-main* :: *root-info*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
*real-alg-2-main*  $ri$   $rai$   $\equiv$  let  $p = \text{poly-real-alg-1 } rai$   
 in (if degree  $p = 1$  then *Rational* (*Rat.Fract* ( $-$  *coeff*  $p$   $0$ ) (*coeff*  $p$   $1$ ))  
 else (case *normalize-bounds-1*  $rai$  of ( $p',l,r$ )  $\Rightarrow$   
*Irrational* (*root-info.number-root*  $ri$   $r$ ) ( $p',l,r$ )))

**definition** *real-alg-2* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
*real-alg-2*  $rai$   $\equiv$  let  $p = \text{poly-real-alg-1 } rai$   
 in (if degree  $p = 1$  then *Rational* (*Rat.Fract* ( $-$  *coeff*  $p$   $0$ ) (*coeff*  $p$   $1$ ))  
 else (case *normalize-bounds-1*  $rai$  of ( $p',l,r$ )  $\Rightarrow$   
*Irrational* (*root-info.number-root* (*root-info*  $p$ )  $r$ ) ( $p',l,r$ )))

**lemma** *degree-1-ipoly*: **assumes** degree  $p = \text{Suc } 0$   
**shows** *ipoly*  $p$   $x = 0 \iff (x = \text{real-of-rat } (\text{Rat.Fract } (- \text{coeff } p \ 0) (\text{coeff } p \ 1)))$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *invariant-1-degree-0*:  
**assumes** *inv*: *invariant-1*  $rai$   
**shows** degree (*poly-real-alg-1*  $rai$ )  $\neq 0$  (**is** degree  $?p \neq 0$ )  
 <proof>

**lemma** *real-alg-2-main*:  
**assumes** *inv*: *invariant-1*  $rai$   
**defines** [*simp*]:  $p \equiv \text{poly-real-alg-1 } rai$   
**assumes** *ric*: *irreducible* (*poly-real-alg-1*  $rai$ )  $\implies$  *root-info-cond*  $ri$  (*poly-real-alg-1*  
 $rai$ )  
**shows** *invariant-2* (*real-alg-2-main*  $ri$   $rai$ ) *real-of-2* (*real-alg-2-main*  $ri$   $rai$ ) =  
*real-of-1*  $rai$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *real-alg-2*: **assumes** *invariant-1*  $rai$   
**shows** *invariant-2* (*real-alg-2*  $rai$ ) *real-of-2* (*real-alg-2*  $rai$ ) = *real-of-1*  $rai$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *invariant-2-realI*:  
**fixes**  $plr$  :: *real-alg-1*  
**defines**  $p \equiv \text{poly-real-alg-1 } plr$  **and**  $l \equiv \text{rai-lb } plr$  **and**  $r \equiv \text{rai-ub } plr$   
**assumes**  $x$ : *root-cond*  $plr$   $x$  **and** *sgn*: *sgn*  $l = \text{sgn } r$   
**and** *ur*: *unique-root*  $plr$   
**and**  $p$ : *poly-cond*  $p$   
**shows** *invariant-2* (*real-alg-2*  $plr$ )  $\wedge$  *real-of-2* (*real-alg-2*  $plr$ ) =  $x$

*<proof>*

### 9.2.5 Comparisons

**fun** *compare-rat-1* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *order* **where**  
  *compare-rat-1* *x* (*p,l,r*) = (if *x* < *l* then *Lt* else if *x* > *r* then *Gt* else  
  if *sgn* (*ipoly p x*) = *sgn*(*ipoly p r*) then *Gt* else *Lt*)

**lemma** *compare-rat-1*: **assumes** *rai*: *invariant-1-2 y*  
  **shows** *compare-rat-1 x y* = *compare* (*of-rat x*) (*real-of-1 y*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *cf-pos-0[simp]*:  $\neg$  *cf-pos 0*  
*<proof>*

### 9.2.6 Negation

**fun** *uminus-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1* **where**  
  *uminus-1* (*p,l,r*) = (*abs-int-poly* (*poly-uminus p*),  $-r$ ,  $-l$ )

**lemma** *uminus-1*: **assumes** *x*: *invariant-1 x*  
  **defines** *y*: *y*  $\equiv$  *uminus-1 x*  
  **shows** *invariant-1 y*  $\wedge$  (*real-of-1 y* =  $-$  *real-of-1 x*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *uminus-1-2*:  
  **assumes** *x*: *invariant-1-2 x*  
  **defines** *y*: *y*  $\equiv$  *uminus-1 x*  
  **shows** *invariant-1-2 y*  $\wedge$  (*real-of-1 y* =  $-$  *real-of-1 x*)  
*<proof>*

**fun** *uminus-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
  *uminus-2* (*Rational r*) = *Rational* ( $-r$ )  
| *uminus-2* (*Irrational n x*) = *real-alg-2* (*uminus-1 x*)

**lemma** *uminus-2*: **assumes** *invariant-2 x*  
  **shows** *real-of-2* (*uminus-2 x*) = *uminus* (*real-of-2 x*)  
  *invariant-2* (*uminus-2 x*)  
*<proof>*

**declare** *uminus-1.simps[simp del]*

**lift-definition** *uminus-3* :: *real-alg-3*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3* **is** *uminus-2*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *uminus-3*: *real-of-3* (*uminus-3 x*) =  $-$  *real-of-3 x*  
*<proof>*

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *uminus*

**begin**  
**lift-definition** *uminus-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **is** *uminus-3*  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**instance**  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**end**

**lemma** *uminus-real-alg*:  $-$  (*real-of*  $x$ ) = *real-of* ( $-$   $x$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

### 9.2.7 Inverse

**fun** *inverse-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
*inverse-1* ( $p, l, r$ ) = *real-alg-2* (*abs-int-poly* (*reflect-poly*  $p$ ), *inverse*  $r$ , *inverse*  $l$ )

**lemma** *invariant-1-2-of-rat*: **assumes** *rc*: *invariant-1-2* *rai*  
**shows** *real-of-1* *rai*  $\neq$  *of-rat*  $x$   
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *inverse-1*:  
**assumes** *rcx*: *invariant-1-2*  $x$   
**defines**  $y$ :  $y \equiv$  *inverse-1*  $x$   
**shows** *invariant-2*  $y \wedge$  (*real-of-2*  $y$  = *inverse* (*real-of-1*  $x$ ))  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**fun** *inverse-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
*inverse-2* (*Rational*  $r$ ) = *Rational* (*inverse*  $r$ )  
 $|$  *inverse-2* (*Irrational*  $n$   $x$ ) = *inverse-1*  $x$

**lemma** *inverse-2*: **assumes** *invariant-2*  $x$   
**shows** *real-of-2* (*inverse-2*  $x$ ) = *inverse* (*real-of-2*  $x$ )  
*invariant-2* (*inverse-2*  $x$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lift-definition** *inverse-3* :: *real-alg-3*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3* **is** *inverse-2*  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *inverse-3*: *real-of-3* (*inverse-3*  $x$ ) = *inverse* (*real-of-3*  $x$ )  
 $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

### 9.2.8 Floor

**fun** *floor-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *int* **where**  
*floor-1* ( $p, l, r$ ) = (*let*  
 ( $l', r', sr'$ ) = *tighten-poly-bounds-epsilon*  $p$  ( $1/2$ )  $l$   $r$  (*sgn* (*ipoly*  $p$   $r$ ));  
 $fr$  = *floor*  $r'$ ;  
 $fl$  = *floor*  $l'$ ;  
 $fr'$  = *rat-of-int*  $fr$   
*in* (*if*  $fr$  =  $fl$  *then*  $fr$  *else*  
*let* ( $l'', r'', sr''$ ) = *tighten-poly-bounds-for-x*  $p$   $fr'$   $l'$   $r'$   $sr'$   
*in* *if*  $fr' <$   $l''$  *then*  $fr$  *else*  $fl$ ))

**lemma** *floor-1*: **assumes** *invariant-1-2*  $x$   
**shows**  $\text{floor } (\text{real-of-1 } x) = \text{floor-1 } x$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

### 9.2.9 Generic Factorization and Bisection Framework

**lemma** *card-1-Collect-ex1*: **assumes**  $\text{card } (\text{Collect } P) = 1$   
**shows**  $\exists! x. P x$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**fun** *sub-interval* ::  $\text{rat} \times \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{rat} \times \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
*sub-interval*  $(l,r) (l',r') = (l' \leq l \wedge r \leq r')$

**fun** *in-interval* ::  $\text{rat} \times \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{real} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
*in-interval*  $(l,r) x = (\text{of-rat } l \leq x \wedge x \leq \text{of-rat } r)$

**definition** *converges-to* ::  $(\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{rat} \times \text{rat}) \Rightarrow \text{real} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
*converges-to*  $f x \equiv (\forall n. \text{in-interval } (f n) x \wedge \text{sub-interval } (f (\text{Suc } n)) (f n))$   
 $\wedge (\forall (\text{eps} :: \text{real}) > 0. \exists n l r. f n = (l,r) \wedge \text{of-rat } r - \text{of-rat } l \leq \text{eps})$

**context**

**fixes** *bnd-update* ::  $'a \Rightarrow 'a$   
**and** *bnd-get* ::  $'a \Rightarrow \text{rat} \times \text{rat}$

**begin**

**definition** *at-step* ::  $(\text{nat} \Rightarrow \text{rat} \times \text{rat}) \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
*at-step*  $f n a \equiv \forall i. \text{bnd-get } ((\text{bnd-update } \hat{\sim} i) a) = f (n + i)$

**partial-function** (*tailrec*) *select-correct-factor-main*

::  $'a \Rightarrow (\text{int poly} \times \text{root-info})\text{list} \Rightarrow (\text{int poly} \times \text{root-info})\text{list}$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{nat} \Rightarrow (\text{int poly} \times \text{root-info}) \times \text{rat} \times \text{rat}$  **where**  
 $[\text{code}]$ : *select-correct-factor-main*  $\text{bnd todo old l r n} = (\text{case todo of Nil}$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{if } n = 1 \text{ then } (\text{hd old}, l, r) \text{ else let } \text{bnd}' = \text{bnd-update } \text{bnd} \text{ in } (\text{case } \text{bnd-get}$   
 $\text{bnd}' \text{ of } (l,r) \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{select-correct-factor-main } \text{bnd}' \text{ old } [] l r 0)$   
 $| \text{Cons } (p,ri) \text{ todo} \Rightarrow \text{let } m = \text{root-info.l-r } ri l r \text{ in}$   
 $\text{if } m = 0 \text{ then } \text{select-correct-factor-main } \text{bnd todo old l r n}$   
 $\text{else } \text{select-correct-factor-main } \text{bnd todo } ((p,ri) \# \text{old}) l r (n + m))$

**definition** *select-correct-factor* ::  $'a \Rightarrow (\text{int poly} \times \text{root-info})\text{list} \Rightarrow$   
 $(\text{int poly} \times \text{root-info}) \times \text{rat} \times \text{rat}$  **where**  
*select-correct-factor*  $\text{init polys} = (\text{case } \text{bnd-get } \text{init} \text{ of } (l,r) \Rightarrow$   
 $\text{select-correct-factor-main } \text{init polys } [] l r 0)$

**lemma** *select-correct-factor-main*: **assumes** *conv*: *converges-to*  $f x$   
**and** *at*: *at-step*  $f i a$   
**and** *res*: *select-correct-factor-main*  $a \text{ todo old l r n} = ((q,ri\text{-fin}),(l\text{-fin},r\text{-fin}))$   
**and** *bnd*: *bnd-get*  $a = (l,r)$

**and**  $ri$ :  $\bigwedge q \ ri. (q,ri) \in set \ todo \cup set \ old \implies root\text{-}info\text{-}cond \ ri \ q$   
**and**  $q0$ :  $\bigwedge q \ ri. (q,ri) \in set \ todo \cup set \ old \implies q \neq 0$   
**and**  $ex$ :  $\exists q. q \in fst \ ' \ set \ todo \cup fst \ ' \ set \ old \wedge ipoly \ q \ x = 0$   
**and**  $dist$ :  $distinct \ (map \ fst \ (todo \ @ \ old))$   
**and**  $old$ :  $\bigwedge q \ ri. (q,ri) \in set \ old \implies root\text{-}info.l\text{-}r \ ri \ l \ r \neq 0$   
**and**  $un$ :  $\bigwedge x :: real. (\exists q. q \in fst \ ' \ set \ todo \cup fst \ ' \ set \ old \wedge ipoly \ q \ x = 0) \implies$   
 $\exists!q. q \in fst \ ' \ set \ todo \cup fst \ ' \ set \ old \wedge ipoly \ q \ x = 0$   
**and**  $n$ :  $n = sum\text{-}list \ (map \ (\lambda \ (q,ri). root\text{-}info.l\text{-}r \ ri \ l \ r) \ old)$   
**shows**  $unique\text{-}root \ (q,l\text{-}fin,r\text{-}fin) \wedge (q,ri\text{-}fin) \in set \ todo \cup set \ old \wedge x = the\text{-}unique\text{-}root$   
 $(q,l\text{-}fin,r\text{-}fin)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *select-correct-factor*: **assumes**

$conv$ :  $converges\text{-}to \ (\lambda \ i. bnd\text{-}get \ ((bnd\text{-}update \ \sim i) \ init)) \ x$   
**and**  $res$ :  $select\text{-}correct\text{-}factor \ init \ polys = ((q,ri),(l,r))$   
**and**  $ri$ :  $\bigwedge q \ ri. (q,ri) \in set \ polys \implies root\text{-}info\text{-}cond \ ri \ q$   
**and**  $q0$ :  $\bigwedge q \ ri. (q,ri) \in set \ polys \implies q \neq 0$   
**and**  $ex$ :  $\exists q. q \in fst \ ' \ set \ polys \wedge ipoly \ q \ x = 0$   
**and**  $dist$ :  $distinct \ (map \ fst \ polys)$   
**and**  $un$ :  $\bigwedge x :: real. (\exists q. q \in fst \ ' \ set \ polys \wedge ipoly \ q \ x = 0) \implies$   
 $\exists!q. q \in fst \ ' \ set \ polys \wedge ipoly \ q \ x = 0$   
**shows**  $unique\text{-}root \ (q,l,r) \wedge (q,ri) \in set \ polys \wedge x = the\text{-}unique\text{-}root \ (q,l,r)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *real-alg-2'* ::  $root\text{-}info \Rightarrow int \ poly \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow real\text{-}alg\text{-}2$  **where**  
 $[code \ del]$ :  $real\text{-}alg\text{-}2' \ ri \ p \ l \ r =$   
 $if \ degree \ p = 1 \ then \ Rational \ (Rat.Fract \ (- \ coeff \ p \ 0) \ (coeff \ p \ 1)) \ else$   
 $real\text{-}alg\text{-}2\text{-}main \ ri \ (case \ tighten\text{-}poly\text{-}bounds\text{-}for\text{-}x \ p \ 0 \ l \ r \ (sgn \ (ipoly \ p \ r)) \ of$   
 $(l',r',sr') \Rightarrow (p, l', r'))$

**lemma** *real-alg-2'-code*[code]:  $real\text{-}alg\text{-}2' \ ri \ p \ l \ r =$   
 $(if \ degree \ p = 1 \ then \ Rational \ (Rat.Fract \ (- \ coeff \ p \ 0) \ (coeff \ p \ 1))$   
 $else \ case \ normalize\text{-}bounds\text{-}1$   
 $(case \ tighten\text{-}poly\text{-}bounds\text{-}for\text{-}x \ p \ 0 \ l \ r \ (sgn \ (ipoly \ p \ r)) \ of \ (l', r', sr') \Rightarrow (p,$   
 $l', r'))$   
 $of \ (p', l, r) \Rightarrow Irrational \ (root\text{-}info.number\text{-}root \ ri \ r) \ (p', l, r))$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**definition** *real-alg-2''* ::  $root\text{-}info \Rightarrow int \ poly \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow rat \Rightarrow real\text{-}alg\text{-}2$  **where**  
 $real\text{-}alg\text{-}2'' \ ri \ p \ l \ r = (case \ normalize\text{-}bounds\text{-}1$   
 $(case \ tighten\text{-}poly\text{-}bounds\text{-}for\text{-}x \ p \ 0 \ l \ r \ (sgn \ (ipoly \ p \ r)) \ of \ (l', r', sr') \Rightarrow (p,$   
 $l', r'))$   
 $of \ (p', l, r) \Rightarrow Irrational \ (root\text{-}info.number\text{-}root \ ri \ r) \ (p', l, r))$

**lemma** *real-alg-2''*:  $degree \ p \neq 1 \implies real\text{-}alg\text{-}2'' \ ri \ p \ l \ r = real\text{-}alg\text{-}2' \ ri \ p \ l \ r$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *poly-cond-degree-0-imp-no-root*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'b :: \{comm\text{-}ring\text{-}1,ring\text{-}char\text{-}0\}$

**assumes** *pc*: *poly-cond p* **and** *deg*: *degree p = 0* **shows** *ipoly p x ≠ 0*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *real-alg-2'*:

**assumes** *ur*: *unique-root (q,l,r)* **and** *pc*: *poly-cond q* **and** *ri*: *root-info-cond ri q*  
**shows** *invariant-2 (real-alg-2' ri q l r) ∧ real-of-2 (real-alg-2' ri q l r) =*  
*the-unique-root (q,l,r) (is - ∧ - = ?x)*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**definition** *select-correct-factor-int-poly* :: *'a ⇒ int poly ⇒ real-alg-2* **where**

*select-correct-factor-int-poly init p* ≡  
 let *qs* = *factors-of-int-poly p*;  
     *polys* = *map (λ q. (q, root-info q)) qs*;  
     *((q,ri),(l,r))* = *select-correct-factor init polys*  
 in *real-alg-2' ri q l r*

**lemma** *select-correct-factor-int-poly*: **assumes**

*conv*: *converges-to (λ i. bnd-get ((bnd-update  $\widehat{\sim}$  i) init)) x*  
**and** *rai*: *select-correct-factor-int-poly init p = rai*  
**and** *x*: *ipoly p x = 0*  
**and** *p*: *p ≠ 0*  
**shows** *invariant-2 rai ∧ real-of-2 rai = x*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩  
**end**

### 9.2.10 Addition

**lemma** *ipoly-0-0[simp]*: *ipoly f (0::'a::{comm-ring-1,ring-char-0}) = 0*  $\longleftrightarrow$  *poly*  
*f 0 = 0*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *add-rat-roots-below[simp]*: *roots-below (poly-add-rat r p) x = (λy. y + of-rat*  
*r) ' roots-below p (x - of-rat r)*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *add-rat-root-cond*:

**shows** *root-cond (cf-pos-poly (poly-add-rat m p),l,r) x = root-cond (p, l - m, r*  
*- m) (x - of-rat m)*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *add-rat-unique-root*: *unique-root (cf-pos-poly (poly-add-rat m p), l, r) =*  
*unique-root (p, l - m, r - m)*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**fun** *add-rat-1* :: *rat ⇒ real-alg-1 ⇒ real-alg-1* **where**

*add-rat-1 r1 (p2,l2,r2) = (*  
 let *p* = *cf-pos-poly (poly-add-rat r1 p2)*;  
     *(l,r,sr) = tighten-poly-bounds-for-x p 0 (l2+r1) (r2+r1) (sgn (ipoly p*  
*(r2+r1)))*)

*in*  
(*p,l,r*)

**lemma** *poly-real-alg-1-add-rat[simp]*:

*poly-real-alg-1* (*add-rat-1* *r y*) = *cf-pos-poly* (*poly-add-rat* *r* (*poly-real-alg-1* *y*))  
<*proof*>

**lemma** *sgn-cf-pos*:

**assumes** *lead-coeff* *p* > 0 **shows** *sgn* (*ipoly* (*cf-pos-poly* *p*) (*x::'a::linordered-field*))  
= *sgn* (*ipoly* *p x*)  
<*proof*>

**lemma** *add-rat-1: fixes* *r1* :: *rat* **assumes** *inv-y: invariant-1-2 y*

**defines** *z*  $\equiv$  *add-rat-1* *r1 y*  
**shows** *invariant-1-2* *z*  $\wedge$  (*real-of-1* *z* = *of-rat* *r1* + *real-of-1* *y*)  
<*proof*>

**fun** *tighten-poly-bounds-binary* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  (*rat*  $\times$  *rat*  $\times$  *rat*)  $\times$  *rat*  $\times$   
*rat*  $\times$  *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  (*rat*  $\times$  *rat*  $\times$  *rat*)  $\times$  *rat*  $\times$  *rat*  $\times$  *rat* **where**  
*tighten-poly-bounds-binary* *cr1 cr2* ((*l1,r1,sr1*),(*l2,r2,sr2*)) =  
(*tighten-poly-bounds* *cr1 l1 r1 sr1*, *tighten-poly-bounds* *cr2 l2 r2 sr2*)

**lemma** *tighten-poly-bounds-binary*:

**assumes** *ur: unique-root* (*p1,l1,r1*) *unique-root* (*p2,l2,r2*) **and** *pt: poly-cond2*  
*p1 poly-cond2 p2*

**defines** *x*  $\equiv$  *the-unique-root* (*p1,l1,r1*) **and** *y*  $\equiv$  *the-unique-root* (*p2,l2,r2*)  
**assumes** *bnd*:  $\bigwedge$  *l1 r1 l2 r2 l r sr1 sr2*. *I l1*  $\Rightarrow$  *I l2*  $\Rightarrow$  *root-cond* (*p1,l1,r1*) *x*  
 $\Rightarrow$  *root-cond* (*p2,l2,r2*) *y*  $\Rightarrow$

*bnd* ((*l1,r1,sr1*),(*l2,r2,sr2*)) = (*l,r*)  $\Rightarrow$  *of-rat* *l*  $\leq$  *f x y*  $\wedge$  *f x y*  $\leq$  *of-rat* *r*

**and** *approx*:  $\bigwedge$  *l1 r1 l2 r2 l1' r1' l2' r2' l l' r r' sr1 sr2 sr1' sr2'*.

*I l1*  $\Rightarrow$  *I l2*  $\Rightarrow$

*l1*  $\leq$  *r1*  $\Rightarrow$  *l2*  $\leq$  *r2*  $\Rightarrow$

(*l,r*) = *bnd* ((*l1,r1,sr1*), (*l2,r2,sr2*))  $\Rightarrow$

(*l',r'*) = *bnd* ((*l1',r1',sr1'*), (*l2',r2',sr2'*))  $\Rightarrow$

(*l1',r1'*)  $\in$  {(*l1*,(*l1+r1*)/2),((*l1+r1*)/2,*r1*)}  $\Rightarrow$

(*l2',r2'*)  $\in$  {(*l2*,(*l2+r2*)/2),((*l2+r2*)/2,*r2*)}  $\Rightarrow$

(*r' - l'*)  $\leq$  3/4 \* (*r - l*)  $\wedge$  *l*  $\leq$  *l'*  $\wedge$  *r'*  $\leq$  *r*

**and** *I-mono*:  $\bigwedge$  *l l'*. *I l*  $\Rightarrow$  *l*  $\leq$  *l'*  $\Rightarrow$  *I l'*

**and** *I*: *I l1 I l2*

**and** *sr*: *sr1* = *sgn* (*ipoly* *p1 r1*) *sr2* = *sgn* (*ipoly* *p2 r2*)

**shows** *converges-to* ( $\lambda$  *i*. *bnd* ((*tighten-poly-bounds-binary* *p1 p2*  $\sim i$ ) ((*l1,r1,sr1*),(*l2,r2,sr2*))))  
(*f x y*)

<*proof*>

**fun** *add-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**

*add-1* (*p1,l1,r1*) (*p2,l2,r2*) = (

*select-correct-factor-int-poly*

(*tighten-poly-bounds-binary* *p1 p2*)

( $\lambda$  ((*l1,r1,sr1*),(*l2,r2,sr2*)). (*l1* + *l2*, *r1* + *r2*))

```
((l1,r1,sgn (ipoly p1 r1)),(l2,r2,sgn (ipoly p2 r2)))
(poly-add p1 p2))
```

**lemma** *add-1*:

**assumes** *x*: *invariant-1-2 x* **and** *y*: *invariant-1-2 y*

**defines** *z*:  $z \equiv \text{add-1 } x \ y$

**shows** *invariant-2 z*  $\wedge$  (*real-of-2 z* = *real-of-1 x* + *real-of-1 y*)

*<proof>*

**declare** *add-rat-1.simps*[*simp del*]

**declare** *add-1.simps*[*simp del*]

### 9.2.11 Multiplication

**context**

**begin**

**private fun** *mult-rat-1-pos* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**

*mult-rat-1-pos* *r1* (*p2,l2,r2*) = *real-alg-2* (*cf-pos-poly* (*poly-mult-rat* *r1* *p2*), *l2\*r1*, *r2\*r1*)

**private fun** *mult-1-pos* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**

*mult-1-pos* (*p1,l1,r1*) (*p2,l2,r2*) =

*select-correct-factor-int-poly*

(*tighten-poly-bounds-binary* *p1* *p2*)

( $\lambda$  ((*l1,r1,sr1*),(*l2,r2,sr2*)). (*l1 \* l2*, *r1 \* r2*))

((*l1,r1,sgn (ipoly p1 r1)*),(*l2,r2,sgn (ipoly p2 r2)*))

(*poly-mult* *p1* *p2*)

**fun** *mult-rat-1* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**

*mult-rat-1* *x y* =

(*if* *x* < 0 *then* *uminus-2* (*mult-rat-1-pos* (-*x*) *y*)

*else if* *x* = 0 *then* *Rational* 0 *else* (*mult-rat-1-pos* *x y*)

**fun** *mult-1* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**

*mult-1* *x y* = (*case* (*x,y*) *of* ((*p1,l1,r1*),(*p2,l2,r2*))  $\Rightarrow$

*if* *r1* > 0 *then*

*if* *r2* > 0 *then* *mult-1-pos* *x y*

*else* *uminus-2* (*mult-1-pos* *x* (*uminus-1 y*))

*else if* *r2* > 0 *then* *uminus-2* (*mult-1-pos* (*uminus-1 x*) *y*)

*else* *mult-1-pos* (*uminus-1 x*) (*uminus-1 y*)

**lemma** *mult-rat-1-pos*: **fixes** *r1* :: *rat* **assumes** *r1*: *r1* > 0 **and** *y*: *invariant-1 y*

**defines** *z*:  $z \equiv \text{mult-rat-1-pos } r1 \ y$

**shows** *invariant-2 z*  $\wedge$  (*real-of-2 z* = *of-rat* *r1* \* *real-of-1 y*)

*<proof>*

**lemma** *mult-1-pos*: **assumes** *x*: *invariant-1-2 x* **and** *y*: *invariant-1-2 y*

**defines** *z*:  $z \equiv \text{mult-1-pos } x \ y$

**assumes** *pos*: *real-of-1 x* > 0 *real-of-1 y* > 0



**shows**  $\text{invariant-2 } z \wedge (\text{real-of-2 } z = \text{real-of-1 } x * \text{real-of-1 } y)$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *mult-1*: **assumes**  $x$ : *invariant-1-2*  $x$  **and**  $y$ : *invariant-1-2*  $y$   
**defines**  $z[\text{simp}]$ :  $z \equiv \text{mult-1 } x y$   
**shows**  $\text{invariant-2 } z \wedge (\text{real-of-2 } z = \text{real-of-1 } x * \text{real-of-1 } y)$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *mult-rat-1*: **fixes**  $x$  **assumes**  $y$ : *invariant-1*  $y$   
**defines**  $z$ :  $z \equiv \text{mult-rat-1 } x y$   
**shows**  $\text{invariant-2 } z \wedge (\text{real-of-2 } z = \text{of-rat } x * \text{real-of-1 } y)$   
 <proof>  
**end**

**declare** *mult-1.simps*[*simp del*]  
**declare** *mult-rat-1.simps*[*simp del*]

### 9.2.12 Root

**definition** *ipoly-root-delta* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real* **where**  
 $\text{ipoly-root-delta } p = \text{Min } (\text{insert } 1 \{ \text{abs } (x - y) \mid x y. \text{ipoly } p x = 0 \wedge \text{ipoly } p y = 0 \wedge x \neq y \}) / 4$

**lemma** *ipoly-root-delta*: **assumes**  $p \neq 0$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly-root-delta } p > 0$   
 $2 \leq \text{card } (\text{Collect } (\text{root-cond } (p, l, r))) \Longrightarrow \text{ipoly-root-delta } p \leq \text{real-of-rat } (r - l) / 4$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *sgn-less-eq-1-rat*: **fixes**  $a b$  :: *rat*  
**shows**  $\text{sgn } a = 1 \Longrightarrow a \leq b \Longrightarrow \text{sgn } b = 1$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *sgn-less-eq-1-real*: **fixes**  $a b$  :: *real*  
**shows**  $\text{sgn } a = 1 \Longrightarrow a \leq b \Longrightarrow \text{sgn } b = 1$   
 <proof>

**definition** *compare-1-rat* :: *real-alg-1*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *order* **where**  
 $\text{compare-1-rat } \text{rai} = (\text{let } p = \text{poly-real-alg-1 } \text{rai} \text{ in}$   
 $\text{if degree } p = 1 \text{ then let } x = \text{Rat.Fract } (- \text{coeff } p 0) (\text{coeff } p 1)$   
 $\text{in } (\lambda y. \text{compare } y x)$   
 $\text{else } (\lambda y. \text{compare-rat-1 } y \text{rai}))$

**lemma** *compare-real-of-rat*:  $\text{compare } (\text{real-of-rat } x) (\text{of-rat } y) = \text{compare } x y$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *compare-1-rat*: **assumes**  $rc$ : *invariant-1*  $y$   
**shows**  $\text{compare-1-rat } y x = \text{compare } (\text{of-rat } x) (\text{real-of-1 } y)$

*<proof>*

**context**

**fixes**  $n :: \text{nat}$

**begin**

**private definition** *initial-lower-bound*  $:: \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{rat}$  **where**

*initial-lower-bound*  $l = (\text{if } l \leq 1 \text{ then } l \text{ else } \text{of-int } (\text{root-rat-floor } n \ l))$

**private definition** *initial-upper-bound*  $:: \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{rat}$  **where**

*initial-upper-bound*  $r = (\text{of-int } (\text{root-rat-ceiling } n \ r))$

**context**

**fixes**  $\text{cmpx} :: \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{order}$

**begin**

**fun** *tighten-bound-root*  $::$

$\text{rat} \times \text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{rat} \times \text{rat}$  **where**

*tighten-bound-root*  $(l', r') = (\text{let}$

$m' = (l' + r') / 2;$

$m = m' \wedge n$

**in case**  $\text{cmpx } m$  **of**

$\text{Eq} \Rightarrow (m', m')$

$|\ \text{Lt} \Rightarrow (m', r')$

$|\ \text{Gt} \Rightarrow (l', m')$

**lemma** *tighten-bound-root*: **assumes**  $\text{sgn } il = 1$  *real-of-1*  $x \geq 0$  **and**

*il*: *real-of-rat*  $il \leq \text{root } n$  (*real-of-1*  $x$ ) **and**

*ir*:  $\text{root } n$  (*real-of-1*  $x$ )  $\leq$  *real-of-rat*  $ir$  **and**

*rai*: *invariant-1*  $x$  **and**

*cmpx*:  $\text{cmpx} = \text{compare-1-rat } x$  **and**

*n*:  $n \neq 0$

**shows** *converges-to*  $(\lambda i. (\text{tighten-bound-root } \wedge i) (il, ir))$

$(\text{root } n$  (*real-of-1*  $x$ )) **(is** *converges-to*  $?f ?x$ )

*<proof>*

**end**

**private fun** *root-pos-1*  $:: \text{real-alg-1} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-2}$  **where**

*root-pos-1*  $(p, l, r) = ($

*select-correct-factor-int-poly*

$(\text{tighten-bound-root } (\text{compare-1-rat } (p, l, r)))$

$(\lambda x. x)$

$(\text{initial-lower-bound } l, \text{initial-upper-bound } r)$

$(\text{poly-nth-root } n \ p))$

**fun** *root-1*  $:: \text{real-alg-1} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-2}$  **where**

*root-1*  $(p, l, r) = ($

*if*  $n = 0 \vee r = 0$  *then* *Rational*  $0$

*else if*  $r > 0$  *then* *root-pos-1*  $(p, l, r)$

*else* *uminus-2*  $(\text{root-pos-1 } (\text{uminus-1 } (p, l, r)))$ )

**context**

**assumes**  $n: n \neq 0$

**begin**

**lemma** *initial-upper-bound*: **assumes**  $x: x > 0$  **and**  $xr: x \leq \text{of-rat } r$

**shows**  $\text{sgn } (\text{initial-upper-bound } r) = 1 \text{ root } n \ x \leq \text{of-rat } (\text{initial-upper-bound } r)$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *initial-lower-bound*: **assumes**  $l: l > 0$  **and**  $lx: \text{of-rat } l \leq x$

**shows**  $\text{sgn } (\text{initial-lower-bound } l) = 1 \text{ of-rat } (\text{initial-lower-bound } l) \leq \text{root } n \ x$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *root-pos-1*:

**assumes**  $x: \text{invariant-1 } x$  **and**  $pos: \text{rai-ub } x > 0$

**defines**  $y: y \equiv \text{root-pos-1 } x$

**shows**  $\text{invariant-2 } y \wedge \text{real-of-2 } y = \text{root } n \ (\text{real-of-1 } x)$   
*<proof>*

**end**

**lemma** *root-1*: **assumes**  $x: \text{invariant-1 } x$

**defines**  $y: y \equiv \text{root-1 } x$

**shows**  $\text{invariant-2 } y \wedge (\text{real-of-2 } y = \text{root } n \ (\text{real-of-1 } x))$   
*<proof>*

**end**

**declare** *root-1.simps*[*simp del*]

### 9.2.13 Embedding of Rational Numbers

**definition** *of-rat-1* ::  $\text{rat} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-1}$  **where**

$\text{of-rat-1 } x \equiv (\text{poly-rat } x, x, x)$

**lemma** *of-rat-1*:

**shows**  $\text{invariant-1 } (\text{of-rat-1 } x)$  **and**  $\text{real-of-1 } (\text{of-rat-1 } x) = \text{of-rat } x$

*<proof>*

**fun** *info-2* ::  $\text{real-alg-2} \Rightarrow \text{rat} + \text{int poly} \times \text{nat}$  **where**

$\text{info-2 } (\text{Rational } x) = \text{Inl } x$

|  $\text{info-2 } (\text{Irrational } n \ (p, l, r)) = \text{Inr } (p, n)$

**lemma** *info-2-card*: **assumes**  $rc: \text{invariant-2 } x$

**shows**  $\text{info-2 } x = \text{Inr } (p, n) \Longrightarrow \text{poly-cond } p \wedge \text{ipoly } p \ (\text{real-of-2 } x) = 0 \wedge \text{degree } p \geq 2$

$\wedge \text{card } (\text{roots-below } p \ (\text{real-of-2 } x)) = n$

$\text{info-2 } x = \text{Inl } y \Longrightarrow \text{real-of-2 } x = \text{of-rat } y$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-of-2-Irrational*:  $\text{invariant-2 } (\text{Irrational } n \ \text{rai}) \Longrightarrow \text{real-of-2 } (\text{Irrational } n \ \text{rai})$

$n \text{ rai}) \neq \text{of-rat } x$   
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *info-2*: **assumes**

*ix*: *invariant-2*  $x$  **and** *iy*: *invariant-2*  $y$

**shows** *info-2*  $x = \text{info-2 } y \longleftrightarrow \text{real-of-2 } x = \text{real-of-2 } y$

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *info-2-unique*: *invariant-2*  $x \implies \text{invariant-2 } y \implies$

*real-of-2*  $x = \text{real-of-2 } y \implies \text{info-2 } x = \text{info-2 } y$

⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *info-2-inj*: *invariant-2*  $x \implies \text{invariant-2 } y \implies \text{info-2 } x = \text{info-2 } y \implies$

*real-of-2*  $x = \text{real-of-2 } y$

⟨proof⟩

**context**

**fixes** *cr1 cr2* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat*

**begin**

**partial-function** (*tailrec*) *compare-1* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *order* **where**

[code]: *compare-1*  $p1 \ p2 \ l1 \ r1 \ sr1 \ l2 \ r2 \ sr2 = (\text{if } r1 < l2 \text{ then } Lt \text{ else if } r2 < l1 \text{ then } Gt$

*else let*

$(l1', r1', sr1') = \text{tighten-poly-bounds } p1 \ l1 \ r1 \ sr1;$

$(l2', r2', sr2') = \text{tighten-poly-bounds } p2 \ l2 \ r2 \ sr2$

*in compare-1*  $p1 \ p2 \ l1' \ r1' \ sr1' \ l2' \ r2' \ sr2')$

**lemma** *compare-1*:

**assumes** *ur1*: *unique-root*  $(p1, l1, r1)$

**and** *ur2*: *unique-root*  $(p2, l2, r2)$

**and** *pc*: *poly-cond2*  $p1 \ \text{poly-cond2 } p2$

**and** *diff*: *the-unique-root*  $(p1, l1, r1) \neq \text{the-unique-root } (p2, l2, r2)$

**and** *sr*:  $sr1 = \text{sgn } (\text{ipoly } p1 \ r1) \ sr2 = \text{sgn } (\text{ipoly } p2 \ r2)$

**shows** *compare-1*  $p1 \ p2 \ l1 \ r1 \ sr1 \ l2 \ r2 \ sr2 = \text{compare } (\text{the-unique-root } (p1, l1, r1))$   
 $(\text{the-unique-root } (p2, l2, r2))$

⟨proof⟩

**end**

**fun** *real-alg-1* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-1* **where**

*real-alg-1* (*Rational*  $r$ ) = *of-rat-1*  $r$

| *real-alg-1* (*Irrational*  $n \ \text{rai}$ ) =  $\text{rai}$

**lemma** *real-alg-1*: *real-of-1*  $(\text{real-alg-1 } x) = \text{real-of-2 } x$

⟨proof⟩

**definition** *root-2* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
*root-2* *n* *x* = *root-1* *n* (*real-alg-1* *x*)

**lemma** *root-2*: **assumes** *invariant-2* *x*  
**shows** *real-of-2* (*root-2* *n* *x*) = *root* *n* (*real-of-2* *x*)  
*invariant-2* (*root-2* *n* *x*)  
<proof>

**fun** *add-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
*add-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Rational* *q*) = *Rational* (*r* + *q*)  
| *add-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Irrational* *n* *x*) = *Irrational* *n* (*add-rat-1* *r* *x*)  
| *add-2* (*Irrational* *n* *x*) (*Rational* *q*) = *Irrational* *n* (*add-rat-1* *q* *x*)  
| *add-2* (*Irrational* *n* *x*) (*Irrational* *m* *y*) = *add-1* *x* *y*

**lemma** *add-2*: **assumes** *x*: *invariant-2* *x* **and** *y*: *invariant-2* *y*  
**shows** *invariant-2* (*add-2* *x* *y*) (**is** ?*g1*)  
**and** *real-of-2* (*add-2* *x* *y*) = *real-of-2* *x* + *real-of-2* *y* (**is** ?*g2*)  
<proof>

**fun** *mult-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2* **where**  
*mult-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Rational* *q*) = *Rational* (*r* \* *q*)  
| *mult-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Irrational* *n* *y*) = *mult-rat-1* *r* *y*  
| *mult-2* (*Irrational* *n* *x*) (*Rational* *q*) = *mult-rat-1* *q* *x*  
| *mult-2* (*Irrational* *n* *x*) (*Irrational* *m* *y*) = *mult-1* *x* *y*

**lemma** *mult-2*: **assumes** *invariant-2* *x* *invariant-2* *y*  
**shows** *real-of-2* (*mult-2* *x* *y*) = *real-of-2* *x* \* *real-of-2* *y*  
*invariant-2* (*mult-2* *x* *y*)  
<proof>

**fun** *to-rat-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat option* **where**  
*to-rat-2* (*Rational* *r*) = *Some* *r*  
| *to-rat-2* (*Irrational* *n* *rai*) = *None*

**lemma** *to-rat-2*: **assumes** *rc*: *invariant-2* *x*  
**shows** *to-rat-2* *x* = (if *real-of-2* *x*  $\in$   $\mathbb{Q}$  then *Some* (*THE* *q*. *real-of-2* *x* = *of-rat* *q*) else *None*)  
<proof>

**fun** *equal-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
*equal-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Rational* *q*) = (*r* = *q*)  
| *equal-2* (*Irrational* *n* (*p*, -)) (*Irrational* *m* (*q*, -)) = (*p* = *q*  $\wedge$  *n* = *m*)  
| *equal-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Irrational* - *yy*) = *False*  
| *equal-2* (*Irrational* - *xx*) (*Rational* *q*) = *False*

**lemma** *equal-2*[*simp*]: **assumes** *rc*: *invariant-2* *x* *invariant-2* *y*  
**shows** *equal-2* *x* *y* = (*real-of-2* *x* = *real-of-2* *y*)  
<proof>

**fun** *compare-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *order* **where**  
*compare-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Rational* *q*) = (*compare* *r* *q*)  
| *compare-2* (*Irrational* *n* (*p,l,r*)) (*Irrational* *m* (*q,l',r'*)) = (*if* *p* = *q*  $\wedge$  *n* = *m* *then*  
*Eq*  
  *else compare-1* *p* *q* *l* *r* (*sgn* (*ipoly* *p* *r*)) *l'* *r'* (*sgn* (*ipoly* *q* *r'*)))  
| *compare-2* (*Rational* *r*) (*Irrational* - *xx*) = (*compare-rat-1* *r* *xx*)  
| *compare-2* (*Irrational* - *xx*) (*Rational* *r*) = (*invert-order* (*compare-rat-1* *r* *xx*))

**lemma** *compare-2*: **assumes** *rc*: *invariant-2* *x* *invariant-2* *y*  
**shows** *compare-2* *x* *y* = *compare* (*real-of-2* *x*) (*real-of-2* *y*)  
*<proof>*

**fun** *sgn-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat* **where**  
*sgn-2* (*Rational* *r*) = *sgn* *r*  
| *sgn-2* (*Irrational* *n* *rai*) = *sgn-1* *rai*

**lemma** *sgn-2*: *invariant-2* *x*  $\implies$  *real-of-rat* (*sgn-2* *x*) = *sgn* (*real-of-2* *x*)  
*<proof>*

**fun** *floor-2* :: *real-alg-2*  $\Rightarrow$  *int* **where**  
*floor-2* (*Rational* *r*) = *floor* *r*  
| *floor-2* (*Irrational* *n* *rai*) = *floor-1* *rai*

**lemma** *floor-2*: *invariant-2* *x*  $\implies$  *floor-2* *x* = *floor* (*real-of-2* *x*)  
*<proof>*

## 9.2.14 Definitions and Algorithms on Type with Invariant

**lift-definition** *of-rat-3* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3* **is** *of-rat-2*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *of-rat-3*: *real-of-3* (*of-rat-3* *x*) = *of-rat* *x*  
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *root-3* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3* **is** *root-2*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *root-3*: *real-of-3* (*root-3* *n* *x*) = *root* *n* (*real-of-3* *x*)  
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *equal-3* :: *real-alg-3*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **is** *equal-2* *<proof>*

**lemma** *equal-3*: *equal-3* *x* *y* = (*real-of-3* *x* = *real-of-3* *y*)  
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *compare-3* :: *real-alg-3*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3*  $\Rightarrow$  *order* **is** *compare-2* *<proof>*

**lemma** *compare-3*:  $\text{compare-3 } x \ y = (\text{compare } (\text{real-of-3 } x) \ (\text{real-of-3 } y))$   
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *add-3* ::  $\text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-3}$  **is** *add-2*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *add-3*:  $\text{real-of-3 } (\text{add-3 } x \ y) = \text{real-of-3 } x + \text{real-of-3 } y$   
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *mult-3* ::  $\text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-3}$  **is** *mult-2*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *mult-3*:  $\text{real-of-3 } (\text{mult-3 } x \ y) = \text{real-of-3 } x * \text{real-of-3 } y$   
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *sgn-3* ::  $\text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{rat}$  **is** *sgn-2* *<proof>*

**lemma** *sgn-3*:  $\text{real-of-rat } (\text{sgn-3 } x) = \text{sgn } (\text{real-of-3 } x)$   
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *to-rat-3* ::  $\text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{rat option}$  **is** *to-rat-2* *<proof>*

**lemma** *to-rat-3*:  $\text{to-rat-3 } x =$   
*(if real-of-3 } x \in \mathbb{Q} then *Some (THE q. real-of-3 } x = of-rat q)* else *None*)  
*<proof>**

**lift-definition** *floor-3* ::  $\text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{int}$  **is** *floor-2* *<proof>*

**lemma** *floor-3*:  $\text{floor-3 } x = \text{floor } (\text{real-of-3 } x)$   
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *info-3* ::  $\text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{rat} + \text{int poly} \times \text{nat}$  **is** *info-2* *<proof>*

**lemma** *info-3-fun*:  $\text{real-of-3 } x = \text{real-of-3 } y \Longrightarrow \text{info-3 } x = \text{info-3 } y$   
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *info-real-alg* ::  $\text{real-alg} \Rightarrow \text{rat} + \text{int poly} \times \text{nat}$  **is** *info-3*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *info-real-alg*:

$\text{info-real-alg } x = \text{Inr } (p,n) \Longrightarrow p$  represents  $(\text{real-of } x) \wedge \text{card } \{y. y \leq \text{real-of } x$   
 $\wedge \text{ipoly } p \ y = 0\} = n \wedge$  *irreducible*  $p$

$\text{info-real-alg } x = \text{Inl } q \Longrightarrow \text{real-of } x = \text{of-rat } q$   
*<proof>*

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *plus*  
**begin**  
**lift-definition** *plus-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **is** *add-3*  
     $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**instance**  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**end**

**lemma** *plus-real-alg*:  $(\text{real-of } x) + (\text{real-of } y) = \text{real-of } (x + y)$   
     $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *minus*  
**begin**  
**definition** *minus-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**  
    *minus-real-alg*  $x\ y = x + (-y)$   
**instance**  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**end**

**lemma** *minus-real-alg*:  $(\text{real-of } x) - (\text{real-of } y) = \text{real-of } (x - y)$   
     $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lift-definition** *of-rat-real-alg* :: *rat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **is** *of-rat-3*  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**lemma** *of-rat-real-alg*:  $\text{real-of-rat } x = \text{real-of } (\text{of-rat-real-alg } x)$   
     $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *zero*  
**begin**  
**definition** *zero-real-alg* :: *real-alg* **where** *zero-real-alg*  $\equiv$  *of-rat-real-alg* 0  
**instance**  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**end**

**lemma** *zero-real-alg*:  $0 = \text{real-of } 0$   
     $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *one*  
**begin**  
**definition** *one-real-alg* :: *real-alg* **where** *one-real-alg*  $\equiv$  *of-rat-real-alg* 1  
**instance**  $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$   
**end**

**lemma** *one-real-alg*:  $1 = \text{real-of } 1$   
     $\langle$ *proof* $\rangle$

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *times*



**begin**  
**lift-definition** *times-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **is** *mult-3*  
 <proof>  
**instance** <proof>  
**end**

**lemma** *times-real-alg*:  $(\text{real-of } x) * (\text{real-of } y) = \text{real-of } (x * y)$   
 <proof>

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *inverse*

**begin**  
**lift-definition** *inverse-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **is** *inverse-3*  
 <proof>  
**definition** *divide-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**  
*divide-real-alg*  $x$   $y = x * \text{inverse } y$   
**instance** <proof>  
**end**

**lemma** *inverse-real-alg*:  $\text{inverse } (\text{real-of } x) = \text{real-of } (\text{inverse } x)$   
 <proof>

**lemma** *divide-real-alg*:  $(\text{real-of } x) / (\text{real-of } y) = \text{real-of } (x / y)$   
 <proof>

**instance** *real-alg* :: *ab-group-add*  
 <proof>

**instance** *real-alg* :: *field*  
 <proof>

**instance** *real-alg* :: *numeral* <proof>

**lift-definition** *root-real-alg* :: *nat*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **is** *root-3*  
 <proof>

**lemma** *root-real-alg*:  $\text{root } n (\text{real-of } x) = \text{real-of } (\text{root-real-alg } n x)$   
 <proof>

**lift-definition** *sgn-real-alg-rat* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat* **is** *sgn-3*  
 <proof>

**lemma** *sgn-real-alg-rat*:  $\text{real-of-rat } (\text{sgn-real-alg-rat } x) = \text{sgn } (\text{real-of } x)$   
 <proof>

```

instantiation real-alg :: sgn
begin
definition sgn-real-alg :: real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  real-alg where
  sgn-real-alg x = of-rat-real-alg (sgn-real-alg-rat x)
instance  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 
end

lemma sgn-real-alg: sgn (real-of x) = real-of (sgn x)
   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 

instantiation real-alg :: equal
begin
lift-definition equal-real-alg :: real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  bool is equal-3
   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 
instance
   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 
end

lemma equal-real-alg: HOL.equal (real-of x) (real-of y) = (x = y)
   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 

instantiation real-alg :: ord
begin

definition less-real-alg :: real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  [code del]: less-real-alg x y = (real-of x < real-of y)

definition less-eq-real-alg :: real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  bool where
  [code del]: less-eq-real-alg x y = (real-of x  $\leq$  real-of y)

instance  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 
end

lemma less-real-alg: less (real-of x) (real-of y) = (x < y)  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 
lemma less-eq-real-alg: less-eq (real-of x) (real-of y) = (x  $\leq$  y)  $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 

instantiation real-alg :: compare-order
begin

lift-definition compare-real-alg :: real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  real-alg  $\Rightarrow$  order is compare-3
   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 

lemma compare-real-alg: compare (real-of x) (real-of y) = (compare x y)
   $\langle$ proof $\rangle$ 

instance

```

*<proof>*  
**end**

**lemma** *less-eq-real-alg-code*[code]:  
  (*less-eq* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*) = *le-of-comp compare*  
  (*less* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool*) = *lt-of-comp compare*  
  *<proof>*

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *abs*  
**begin**

**definition** *abs-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**  
  *abs-real-alg* *x* = (*if* *real-of* *x* < 0 *then* *uminus* *x* *else* *x*)  
**instance** *<proof>*  
**end**

**lemma** *abs-real-alg*: *abs* (*real-of* *x*) = *real-of* (*abs* *x*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *sgn-real-alg-sound*: *sgn* *x* = (*if* *x* = 0 *then* 0 *else* *if* 0 < *real-of* *x* *then* 1  
*else* - 1)  
  (**is** - = ?*r*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-of-of-int*: *real-of-rat* (*rat-of-int* *z*) = *real-of* (*of-int* *z*)  
*<proof>*

**instance** *real-alg* :: *linordered-field*  
*<proof>*

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *floor-ceiling*  
**begin**

**lift-definition** *floor-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *int* **is** *floor-3*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *floor-real-alg*: *floor* (*real-of* *x*) = *floor* *x*  
*<proof>*

**instance**  
*<proof>*  
**end**

**instantiation** *real-alg* ::  
  {*unique-euclidean-ring*, *normalization-euclidean-semiring*, *normalization-semidom-multiplicative*}  
**begin**

**definition** [*simp*]: *normalize-real-alg* = (*normalize-field* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  -)

**definition** [*simp*]: *unit-factor-real-alg* = (*unit-factor-field* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  -)

**definition** [*simp*]: *modulo-real-alg* = (*mod-field* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  -)

**definition** [simp]: *euclidean-size-real-alg* = (*euclidean-size-field* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  -)

**definition** [simp]: *division-segment* (*x* :: *real-alg*) = 1

**instance**

*<proof>*

**end**

**instantiation** *real-alg* :: *euclidean-ring-gcd*

**begin**

**definition** *gcd-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**

*gcd-real-alg* = *Euclidean-Algorithm.gcd*

**definition** *lcm-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**

*lcm-real-alg* = *Euclidean-Algorithm.lcm*

**definition** *Gcd-real-alg* :: *real-alg set*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**

*Gcd-real-alg* = *Euclidean-Algorithm.Gcd*

**definition** *Lcm-real-alg* :: *real-alg set*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**

*Lcm-real-alg* = *Euclidean-Algorithm.Lcm*

**instance** *<proof>*

**end**

**instance** *real-alg* :: *field-gcd* *<proof>*

**definition** *min-int-poly-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly* **where**

*min-int-poly-real-alg* *x* = (*case info-real-alg* *x* of *Inl* *r*  $\Rightarrow$  *poly-rat* *r* | *Inr* (*p*, -)  $\Rightarrow$  *p*)

**lemma** *min-int-poly-real-alg-real-of*: *min-int-poly-real-alg* *x* = *min-int-poly* (*real-of* *x*)

*<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-real-code*: *min-int-poly-real* (*real-of* *x*) = *min-int-poly-real-alg* *x*

*<proof>*

**lemma** *min-int-poly-real-of*: *min-int-poly* (*real-of* *x*) = *min-int-poly* *x*

*<proof>*

**definition** *real-alg-of-real* :: *real*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg* **where**

*real-alg-of-real* *x* = (*if* ( $\exists$  *y*. *x* = *real-of* *y*) *then* (*THE* *y*. *x* = *real-of* *y*) *else* 0)

**lemma** *real-alg-of-real-code*[*code*]: *real-alg-of-real* (*real-of* *x*) = *x*

*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *to-rat-real-alg-main* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat option* **is** *to-rat-3*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to-rat-real-alg-main*: *to-rat-real-alg-main* *x* = (if *real-of* *x*  $\in$   $\mathbb{Q}$  then  
Some (THE *q*. *real-of* *x* = *of-rat* *q*) else None)  
*<proof>*

**definition** *to-rat-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *rat* **where**  
*to-rat-real-alg* *x* = (case *to-rat-real-alg-main* *x* of Some *q*  $\Rightarrow$  *q* | None  $\Rightarrow$  0)

**definition** *is-rat-real-alg* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
*is-rat-real-alg* *x* = (case *to-rat-real-alg-main* *x* of Some *q*  $\Rightarrow$  True | None  $\Rightarrow$  False)

**lemma** *is-rat-real-alg*: *is-rat* (*real-of* *x*) = (*is-rat-real-alg* *x*)  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *to-rat-real-alg*: *to-rat* (*real-of* *x*) = (*to-rat-real-alg* *x*)  
*<proof>*

**definition** *algebraic-real* :: *real*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
[simp]: *algebraic-real* = *algebraic*

**lemma** *algebraic-real-iff*[code-unfold]: *algebraic* = *algebraic-real* *<proof>*

**lemma** *algebraic-real-code*[code]: *algebraic-real* (*real-of* *x*) = True  
*<proof>*

### 9.3 Real Algebraic Numbers as Implementation for Real Numbers

**lemmas** *real-alg-code-eqns* =

*one-real-alg*  
*zero-real-alg*  
*uminus-real-alg*  
*root-real-alg*  
*minus-real-alg*  
*plus-real-alg*  
*times-real-alg*  
*inverse-real-alg*  
*divide-real-alg*  
*equal-real-alg*  
*less-real-alg*  
*less-eq-real-alg*  
*compare-real-alg*  
*sgn-real-alg*  
*abs-real-alg*  
*floor-real-alg*  
*is-rat-real-alg*

```

to-rat-real-alg
min-int-poly-real-code

```

**code-datatype** *real-of*

```

declare [[code drop:
  plus :: real ⇒ real ⇒ real
  uminus :: real ⇒ real
  minus :: real ⇒ real ⇒ real
  times :: real ⇒ real ⇒ real
  inverse :: real ⇒ real
  divide :: real ⇒ real ⇒ real
  floor :: real ⇒ int
  HOL.equal :: real ⇒ real ⇒ bool
  compare :: real ⇒ real ⇒ order
  less-eq :: real ⇒ real ⇒ bool
  less :: real ⇒ real ⇒ bool
  0 :: real
  1 :: real
  sgn :: real ⇒ real
  abs :: real ⇒ real
  min-int-poly-real
  root]]

```

**declare** *real-alg-code-eqns* [code equation]

```

lemma Ratreal-code[code]:
  Ratreal = real-of ◦ of-rat-real-alg
  ⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma real-of-post[code-post]: real-of (Real-Alg-Quotient (Real-Alg-Invariant (Rational
x))) = of-rat x
  ⟨proof⟩

```

**end**

## 10 Real Roots

This theory contains an algorithm to determine the set of real roots of a rational polynomial. For polynomials with real coefficients, we refer to the AFP entry "Factor-Algebraic-Polynomial".

```

theory Real-Roots
imports
  Real-Algebraic-Numbers
begin

```

```

hide-const (open) UnivPoly.coeff
hide-const (open) Module.smult

```

Division of integers, rounding to the upper value.

**definition** *div-ceiling* :: *int* ⇒ *int* ⇒ *int* **where**

*div-ceiling* *x y* = (*let* *q* = *x div y* *in if* *q \* y = x* *then* *q* *else* *q + 1*)

**definition** *root-bound* :: *int poly* ⇒ *rat* **where**

*root-bound* *p* ≡ *let*

*n* = *degree p*;

*m* = *1 + div-ceiling (max-list-non-empty (map (λ*i*. abs (coeff *p* *i*)) [0..*n*]))*  
*(abs (lead-coeff *p*))*)

— round to the next higher number  $2^{\wedge}n$ , so that bisection will

— stay on integers for as long as possible

*in of-int (2 ^ (log-ceiling 2 *m*))*

**partial-function** (*tailrec*) *roots-of-2-main* ::

*int poly* ⇒ *root-info* ⇒ (*rat* ⇒ *rat* ⇒ *nat*) ⇒ (*rat* × *rat*)*list* ⇒ *real-alg-2 list* ⇒  
*real-alg-2 list* **where**

[*code*]: *roots-of-2-main p ri cr lrs rais* = (*case lrs of Nil* ⇒ *rais*

| (*l,r*) # *lrs* ⇒ *let* *c* = *cr l r* *in*

*if* *c* = *0* *then roots-of-2-main p ri cr lrs rais*

*else if* *c* = *1* *then roots-of-2-main p ri cr lrs (real-alg-2'' ri p l r # rais)*

*else let* *m* = (*l + r*) / *2* *in roots-of-2-main p ri cr ((*m,r*) # (*l,m*) # *lrs*) rais*)

**definition** *roots-of-2-irr* :: *int poly* ⇒ *real-alg-2 list* **where**

*roots-of-2-irr p* = (*if* *degree p* = *1*

*then [Rational (Rat.Fract (- coeff *p* 0) (coeff *p* 1)) ]* *else*

*let* *ri* = *root-info p*;

*cr* = *root-info.l-r ri*;

*B* = *root-bound p*

*in (roots-of-2-main p ri cr [(-*B*,*B*)] [])*)

**lemma** *root-imp-deg-nonzero*: **assumes** *p* ≠ *0 poly p x = 0*

**shows** *degree p* ≠ *0*

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *cauchy-root-bound*: **fixes** *x* :: '*a* :: *real-normed-field*

**assumes** *x*: *poly p x = 0* **and** *p*: *p* ≠ *0*

**shows** *norm x* ≤ *1 + max-list-non-empty (map (λ*i*. norm (coeff *p* *i*)) [0 ..<*

*degree p*])

/ *norm (lead-coeff p)* (**is** - ≤ - + ?*max* / ?*nlc*)

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *div-le-div-ceiling*: *x div y* ≤ *div-ceiling x y*

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *div-ceiling*: **assumes** *q*: *q* ≠ *0*

**shows** (*of-int x* :: '*a* :: *floor-ceiling*) / *of-int q* ≤ *of-int (div-ceiling x q)*

⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *max-list-non-empty-map*: **assumes** *hom*:  $\bigwedge x y. \max (f x) (f y) = f (\max$

$x\ y)$   
**shows**  $xs \neq [] \implies \text{max-list-non-empty } (\text{map } f\ xs) = f\ (\text{max-list-non-empty } xs)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *root-bound*: **assumes** *root-bound*  $p = B$  **and** *deg*:  $\text{degree } p > 0$   
**shows**  $\text{ipoly } p\ (x :: \text{real}) = 0 \implies \text{norm } x \leq \text{of-rat } B\ B \geq 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**fun** *pairwise-disjoint* :: *'a set list*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **where**  
*pairwise-disjoint* [] = *True*  
| *pairwise-disjoint*  $(x \# xs) = ((x \cap (\bigcup y \in \text{set } xs. y) = \{\}) \wedge \text{pairwise-disjoint } xs)$

**lemma** *roots-of-2-irr*: **assumes** *pc*: *poly-cond*  $p$  **and** *deg*:  $\text{degree } p > 0$   
**shows** *real-of-2* ' *set*  $(\text{roots-of-2-irr } p) = \{x. \text{ipoly } p\ x = 0\}$  (**is** ?one)  
*Ball*  $(\text{set } (\text{roots-of-2-irr } p))$  *invariant-2* (**is** ?two)  
*distinct*  $(\text{map } \text{real-of-2 } (\text{roots-of-2-irr } p))$  (**is** ?three)  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *roots-of-2* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2 list* **where**  
*roots-of-2*  $p = \text{concat } (\text{map } \text{roots-of-2-irr } (\text{factors-of-int-poly } p))$

**lemma** *roots-of-2*:  
**shows**  $p \neq 0 \implies \text{real-of-2 } ' \text{set } (\text{roots-of-2 } p) = \{x. \text{ipoly } p\ x = 0\}$   
*Ball*  $(\text{set } (\text{roots-of-2 } p))$  *invariant-2*  
*distinct*  $(\text{map } \text{real-of-2 } (\text{roots-of-2 } p))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lift-definition** *roots-of-3* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3 list* **is** *roots-of-2*  
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *roots-of-3*:  
**shows**  $p \neq 0 \implies \text{real-of-3 } ' \text{set } (\text{roots-of-3 } p) = \{x. \text{ipoly } p\ x = 0\}$   
*distinct*  $(\text{map } \text{real-of-3 } (\text{roots-of-3 } p))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lift-definition** *roots-of-real-alg* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg list* **is** *roots-of-3*  $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *roots-of-real-alg*:  
 $p \neq 0 \implies \text{real-of } ' \text{set } (\text{roots-of-real-alg } p) = \{x. \text{ipoly } p\ x = 0\}$   
*distinct*  $(\text{map } \text{real-of } (\text{roots-of-real-alg } p))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

It follows an implementation for *roots-of-3*, since the current definition does not provide a code equation.

**context**  
**begin**  
**private typedef** *real-alg-2-list* =  $\{xs. \text{Ball } (\text{set } xs) \text{ invariant-2}\}$   $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$



**setup-lifting** *type-definition-real-alg-2-list*

**private lift-definition** *roots-of-2-list* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2-list* **is** *roots-of-2*  
*<proof>* **lift-definition** *real-alg-2-list-nil* :: *real-alg-2-list*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* **is**  $\lambda$  *xs*. *case xs*  
*of Nil*  $\Rightarrow$  *True* | *-*  $\Rightarrow$  *False* *<proof>* **fun** *real-alg-2-list-hd-intern* :: *real-alg-2 list*  $\Rightarrow$   
*real-alg-2* **where**  
    *real-alg-2-list-hd-intern* (*Cons x xs*) = *x*  
    | *real-alg-2-list-hd-intern Nil* = *of-rat-2 0*

**private lift-definition** *real-alg-2-list-hd* :: *real-alg-2-list*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3* **is** *real-alg-2-list-hd-intern*  
*<proof>* **lift-definition** *real-alg-2-list-tl* :: *real-alg-2-list*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-2-list* **is** *tl*  
*<proof>* **lift-definition** *real-alg-2-list-length* :: *real-alg-2-list*  $\Rightarrow$  *nat* **is** *length* *<proof>*  
**lemma** *real-alg-2-list-length[simp]*:  $\neg$  *real-alg-2-list-nil xs*  $\Longrightarrow$  *real-alg-2-list-length*  
*(real-alg-2-list-tl xs)* < *real-alg-2-list-length xs*  
*<proof>* **function** *real-alg-2-list-convert* :: *real-alg-2-list*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3 list* **where**  
    *real-alg-2-list-convert xs* = (*if real-alg-2-list-nil xs then* [] *else real-alg-2-list-hd xs*  
  
    # *real-alg-2-list-convert (real-alg-2-list-tl xs)*) *<proof>*

**termination** *<proof>* **definition** *roots-of-3-impl* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3 list* **where**  
    *roots-of-3-impl p* = *real-alg-2-list-convert (roots-of-2-list p)*

**private lift-definition** *real-alg-2-list-convert-id* :: *real-alg-2-list*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-3 list*  
**is** *id*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-alg-2-list-convert*: *real-alg-2-list-convert xs* = *real-alg-2-list-convert-id*  
*xs*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *roots-of-3-code[code]*: *roots-of-3 p* = *roots-of-3-impl p*  
*<proof>*  
**end**

**definition** *real-roots-of-int-poly* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real list* **where**  
    *real-roots-of-int-poly p* = *map real-of (roots-of-real-alg p)*

**definition** *real-roots-of-rat-poly* :: *rat poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *real list* **where**  
    *real-roots-of-rat-poly p* = *map real-of (roots-of-real-alg (snd (rat-to-int-poly p)))*

**abbreviation** *rpoly* :: *rat poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a* :: *field-char-0*  $\Rightarrow$  *'a*  
**where** *rpoly f*  $\equiv$  *poly (map-poly of-rat f)*

**lemma** *real-roots-of-int-poly*: *p*  $\neq 0$   $\Longrightarrow$  *set (real-roots-of-int-poly p)* = {*x*. *ipoly p*  
*x = 0*}  
    *distinct (real-roots-of-int-poly p)*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-roots-of-rat-poly*:  $p \neq 0 \implies \text{set } (\text{real-roots-of-rat-poly } p) = \{x. \text{rpoly } p \ x = 0\}$   
*distinct* (*real-roots-of-rat-poly*  $p$ )  
 <proof>

**end**

## 11 Complex Roots of Real Valued Polynomials

We provide conversion functions between polynomials over the real and the complex numbers, and prove that the complex roots of real-valued polynomial always come in conjugate pairs. We further show that also the order of the complex conjugate roots is identical.

As a consequence, we derive that every real-valued polynomial can be factored into real factors of degree at most 2, and we prove that every polynomial over the reals with odd degree has a real root.

**theory** *Complex-Roots-Real-Poly*

**imports**

*HOL-Computational-Algebra.Fundamental-Theorem-Algebra*

*Polynomial-Factorization.Order-Polynomial*

*Polynomial-Factorization.Explicit-Roots*

*Polynomial-Interpolation.Ring-Hom-Poly*

**begin**

**interpretation** *of-real-poly-hom*: *map-poly-idom-hom complex-of-real*<proof>

**lemma** *real-poly-real-coeff*: **assumes**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$

**shows**  $\text{coeff } p \ x \in \mathbb{R}$

<proof>

**lemma** *complex-conjugate-root*:

**assumes** *real*:  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  **and** *rt*:  $\text{poly } p \ c = 0$

**shows**  $\text{poly } p \ (\text{cnj } c) = 0$

<proof>

**context**

**fixes**  $p :: \text{complex poly}$

**assumes** *coeffs*:  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$

**begin**

**lemma** *map-poly-Re-poly*: **fixes**  $x :: \text{real}$

**shows**  $\text{poly } (\text{map-poly } \text{Re } p) \ x = \text{poly } p \ (\text{of-real } x)$

<proof>

**lemma** *map-poly-Re-coeffs*:

$\text{coeffs } (\text{map-poly } \text{Re } p) = \text{map } \text{Re } (\text{coeffs } p)$

<proof>

**lemma** *map-poly-Re-0*:  $\text{map-poly Re } p = 0 \implies p = 0$   
*<proof>*

**end**

**lemma** *real-poly-add*:  
**assumes**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } q) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (p + q)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-sum*:  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge x. x \in S \implies \text{set } (\text{coeffs } (f x)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (\text{sum } f S)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-smult*: **fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \{\text{idom}, \text{real-algebra-1}\}$  *poly*  
**assumes**  $c \in \mathbb{R}$   $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (\text{smult } c p)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-pCons*:  
**assumes**  $c \in \mathbb{R}$   $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (p\text{Cons } c p)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-mult*: **fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \{\text{idom}, \text{real-algebra-1}\}$  *poly*  
**assumes**  $p: \text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  **and**  $q: \text{set } (\text{coeffs } q) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (p * q)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  *<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-power*: **fixes**  $p :: 'a :: \{\text{idom}, \text{real-algebra-1}\}$  *poly*  
**assumes**  $p: \text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (p \wedge n)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-prod*: **fixes**  $f :: 'a \Rightarrow 'b :: \{\text{idom}, \text{real-algebra-1}\}$  *poly*  
**assumes**  $\bigwedge x. x \in S \implies \text{set } (\text{coeffs } (f x)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (\text{prod } f S)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-uminus*:  
**assumes**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{coeffs } (-p)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
*<proof>*

**lemma** *real-poly-minus*:

**assumes**  $set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   $set (coeffs\ q) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $set (coeffs\ (p - q)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *fixes*  $p :: 'a :: real-field\ poly$   
**assumes**  $p: set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  **and**  $*: set (coeffs\ q) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows** *real-poly-div*:  $set (coeffs\ (q\ div\ p)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**and** *real-poly-mod*:  $set (coeffs\ (q\ mod\ p)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *real-poly-factor*: **fixes**  $p :: 'a :: real-field\ poly$   
**assumes**  $set (coeffs\ (p * q)) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
 $set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
 $p \neq 0$   
**shows**  $set (coeffs\ q) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *complex-conjugate-order*: **assumes** *real*:  $set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
 $p \neq 0$   
**shows**  $order\ (cnj\ c)\ p = order\ c\ p$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-poly-of-real-Re*: **assumes**  $set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows** *map-poly of-real*  $(map-poly\ Re\ p) = p$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-poly-Re-of-real*:  $map-poly\ Re\ (map-poly\ of-real\ p) = p$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-poly-Re-mult*: **assumes**  $p: set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**and**  $q: set (coeffs\ q) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$  **shows**  $map-poly\ Re\ (p * q) = map-poly\ Re\ p * map-poly\ Re\ q$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *map-poly-Re-power*: **assumes**  $p: set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $map-poly\ Re\ (p^{\hat{n}}) = (map-poly\ Re\ p)^{\hat{n}}$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *real-degree-2-factorization-exists-complex*: **fixes**  $p :: complex\ poly$   
**assumes**  $pR: set (coeffs\ p) \subseteq \mathbb{R}$   
**shows**  $\exists\ qs. p = prod-list\ qs \wedge (\forall\ q \in set\ qs. set (coeffs\ q) \subseteq \mathbb{R} \wedge degree\ q \leq 2)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *real-degree-2-factorization-exists*: **fixes**  $p :: real\ poly$   
**shows**  $\exists\ qs. p = prod-list\ qs \wedge (\forall\ q \in set\ qs. degree\ q \leq 2)$   
 $\langle proof \rangle$

**lemma** *odd-degree-imp-real-root*: **assumes**  $odd\ (degree\ p)$

**shows**  $\exists x. \text{poly } p \ x = (0 :: \text{real})$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**end**

## 11.1 Compare Instance for Complex Numbers

We define some code equations for complex numbers, provide a comparator for complex numbers, and register complex numbers for the container framework.

**theory** *Compare-Complex*

**imports**

*HOL.Complex*

*Polynomial-Interpolation.Missing-Unsorted*

*Deriving.Compare-Real*

*Containers.Set-Impl*

**begin**

**declare**  $[[\text{code drop: Gcd-fin}]]$

**declare**  $[[\text{code drop: Lcm-fin}]]$

**definition** *gcds* ::  $'a::\text{semiring-gcd list} \Rightarrow 'a$   
**where**  $[\text{simp, code-abbrev}]: \text{gcds } xs = \text{gcd-list } xs$

**lemma**  $[\text{code}]$ :  
 $\text{gcds } xs = \text{fold gcd } xs \ 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *lcms* ::  $'a::\text{semiring-gcd list} \Rightarrow 'a$   
**where**  $[\text{simp, code-abbrev}]: \text{lcms } xs = \text{lcm-list } xs$

**lemma**  $[\text{code}]$ :  
 $\text{lcms } xs = \text{fold lcm } xs \ 1$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *in-reals-code*  $[\text{code-unfold}]$ :  
 $x \in \mathbf{R} \iff \text{Im } x = 0$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *is-norm-1* ::  $\text{complex} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
 $\text{is-norm-1 } z = ((\text{Re } z)^2 + (\text{Im } z)^2 = 1)$

**lemma** *is-norm-1*  $[\text{simp}]$ :  $\text{is-norm-1 } x = (\text{norm } x = 1)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *is-norm-le-1* ::  $\text{complex} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
 $\text{is-norm-le-1 } z = ((\text{Re } z)^2 + (\text{Im } z)^2 \leq 1)$

**lemma** *is-norm-le-1*  $[\text{simp}]$ :  $\text{is-norm-le-1 } x = (\text{norm } x \leq 1)$

```

    <proof>

instantiation complex :: finite-UNIV
begin
definition finite-UNIV = Phantom(complex) False
instance
    <proof>
end

instantiation complex :: compare
begin
definition compare-complex :: complex  $\Rightarrow$  complex  $\Rightarrow$  order where
    compare-complex x y = compare (Re x, Im x) (Re y, Im y)

instance
    <proof>
end

derive (eq) ceq complex real
derive (compare) ccompare complex
derive (compare) ccompare real
derive (dlist) set-impl complex real

end

```

## 12 Interval Arithmetic

We provide basic interval arithmetic operations for real and complex intervals. As application we prove that complex polynomial evaluation is continuous w.r.t. interval arithmetic. To be more precise, if an interval sequence converges to some element  $x$ , then the interval polynomial evaluation of  $f$  tends to  $f(x)$ .

```

theory Interval-Arithmetic
imports
    Algebraic-Numbers-Prelim
begin
    Intervals
datatype ('a) interval = Interval (lower: 'a) (upper: 'a)

hide-const(open) lower upper

definition to-interval where to-interval a  $\equiv$  Interval a a

abbreviation of-int-interval :: int  $\Rightarrow$  'a :: ring-1 interval where
    of-int-interval x  $\equiv$  to-interval (of-int x)

```

## 12.1 Syntactic Class Instantiations

```
instantiation interval :: (zero) zero begin
  definition zero-interval where 0  $\equiv$  Interval 0 0
  instance<proof>
end
```

```
instantiation interval :: (one) one begin
  definition 1 = Interval 1 1
  instance<proof>
end
```

```
instantiation interval :: (plus) plus begin
  fun plus-interval where Interval lx ux + Interval ly uy = Interval (lx + ly) (ux
+ uy)
  instance<proof>
end
```

```
instantiation interval :: (uminus) uminus begin
  fun uminus-interval where - Interval l u = Interval (-u) (-l)
  instance<proof>
end
```

```
instantiation interval :: (minus) minus begin
  fun minus-interval where Interval lx ux - Interval ly uy = Interval (lx - uy)
(ux - ly)
  instance<proof>
end
```

```
instantiation interval :: ({ord,times}) times begin
  fun times-interval where
    Interval lx ux * Interval ly uy =
      (let x1 = lx * ly; x2 = lx * uy; x3 = ux * ly; x4 = ux * uy
       in Interval (min x1 (min x2 (min x3 x4))) (max x1 (max x2 (max x3 x4))))
  instance<proof>
end
```

```
instantiation interval :: ({ord,times,inverse}) inverse begin
  fun inverse-interval where
    inverse (Interval l u) = Interval (inverse u) (inverse l)
  definition divide-interval :: 'a interval  $\Rightarrow$  - where
    divide-interval X Y = X * (inverse Y)
  instance<proof>
end
```

## 12.2 Class Instantiations

```
instance interval :: (semigroup-add) semigroup-add
<proof>
```

**instance** *interval* :: (*monoid-add*) *monoid-add*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**instance** *interval* :: (*ab-semigroup-add*) *ab-semigroup-add*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**instance** *interval* :: (*comm-monoid-add*) *comm-monoid-add* ⟨*proof*⟩

Intervals do not form an additive group, but satisfy some properties.

**lemma** *interval-uminus-zero*[*simp*]:  
**shows**  $-(0 :: 'a :: \text{group-add } \text{interval}) = 0$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *interval-diff-zero*[*simp*]:  
**fixes**  $a :: 'a :: \text{cancel-comm-monoid-add } \text{interval}$   
**shows**  $a - 0 = a$  ⟨*proof*⟩

Without type invariant, intervals do not form a multiplicative monoid, but satisfy some properties.

**instance** *interval* :: (*linorder,mult-zero*) *mult-zero*  
 ⟨*proof*⟩

### 12.3 Membership

**fun** *in-interval* :: '*a* :: *order* ⇒ '*a* *interval* ⇒ *bool* ((-/ ∈<sub>*i*</sub> -) [51, 51] 50) **where**  
 $y \in_i \text{Interval } lx \text{ } ux = (lx \leq y \wedge y \leq ux)$

**lemma** *in-interval-to-interval*[*intro!*]:  $a \in_i \text{to-interval } a$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *plus-in-interval*:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{ordered-comm-monoid-add}$   
**shows**  $x \in_i X \implies y \in_i Y \implies x + y \in_i X + Y$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *uminus-in-interval*:  
**fixes**  $x :: 'a :: \text{ordered-ab-group-add}$   
**shows**  $x \in_i X \implies -x \in_i -X$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *minus-in-interval*:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{ordered-ab-group-add}$   
**shows**  $x \in_i X \implies y \in_i Y \implies x - y \in_i X - Y$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *times-in-interval*:  
**fixes**  $x \ y :: 'a :: \text{linordered-ring}$   
**assumes**  $x \in_i X \ y \in_i Y$   
**shows**  $x * y \in_i X * Y$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩



## 12.4 Convergence

**definition** *interval-tendsto* :: (nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a :: topological-space interval)  $\Rightarrow$  'a  $\Rightarrow$  bool  
 (infixr  $\longrightarrow_i$  55) **where**  
 (X  $\longrightarrow_i$  x)  $\equiv$  ((interval.upper  $\circ$  X)  $\longrightarrow$  x)  $\wedge$  ((interval.lower  $\circ$  X)  $\longrightarrow$  x)

**lemma** *interval-tendstoI*[intro]:  
**assumes** (interval.upper  $\circ$  X)  $\longrightarrow$  x **and** (interval.lower  $\circ$  X)  $\longrightarrow$  x  
**shows** X  $\longrightarrow_i$  x  
 <proof>

**lemma** *const-interval-tendsto*: ( $\lambda i.$  to-interval a)  $\longrightarrow_i$  a  
 <proof>

**lemma** *interval-tendsto-0*: ( $\lambda i.$  0)  $\longrightarrow_i$  0  
 <proof>

**lemma** *plus-interval-tendsto*:  
**fixes** x y :: 'a :: topological-monoid-add  
**assumes** X  $\longrightarrow_i$  x Y  $\longrightarrow_i$  y  
**shows** ( $\lambda i.$  X i + Y i)  $\longrightarrow_i$  x + y  
 <proof>

**lemma** *uminus-interval-tendsto*:  
**fixes** x :: 'a :: topological-group-add  
**assumes** X  $\longrightarrow_i$  x  
**shows** ( $\lambda i.$  - X i)  $\longrightarrow_i$  -x  
 <proof>

**lemma** *minus-interval-tendsto*:  
**fixes** x y :: 'a :: topological-group-add  
**assumes** X  $\longrightarrow_i$  x Y  $\longrightarrow_i$  y  
**shows** ( $\lambda i.$  X i - Y i)  $\longrightarrow_i$  x - y  
 <proof>

**lemma** *times-interval-tendsto*:  
**fixes** x y :: 'a :: {linorder-topology, real-normed-algebra}  
**assumes** X  $\longrightarrow_i$  x Y  $\longrightarrow_i$  y  
**shows** ( $\lambda i.$  X i \* Y i)  $\longrightarrow_i$  x \* y  
 <proof>

**lemma** *interval-tendsto-neq*:  
**fixes** a b :: real  
**assumes** ( $\lambda i.$  f i)  $\longrightarrow_i$  a **and** a  $\neq$  b  
**shows**  $\exists n. \neg b \in_i f n$   
 <proof>

## 12.5 Complex Intervals

**datatype** *complex-interval* = *Complex-Interval* (*Re-interval*: *real interval*) (*Im-interval*: *real interval*)

**definition** *in-complex-interval* :: *complex*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *bool* ((-/  $\in_c$  -) [51, 51] 50) **where**

$y \in_c x \equiv (\text{case } x \text{ of } \text{Complex-Interval } r \ i \Rightarrow \text{Re } y \in_i r \wedge \text{Im } y \in_i i)$

**instantiation** *complex-interval* :: *comm-monoid-add* **begin**

**definition**  $0 \equiv \text{Complex-Interval } 0 \ 0$

**fun** *plus-complex-interval* :: *complex-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex-interval* **where**

$\text{Complex-Interval } rx \ ix + \text{Complex-Interval } ry \ iy = \text{Complex-Interval } (rx + ry) (ix + iy)$

**instance**

*<proof>*

**end**

**lemma** *plus-complex-interval*:  $x \in_c X \Longrightarrow y \in_c Y \Longrightarrow x + y \in_c X + Y$

*<proof>*

**definition** *of-int-complex-interval* :: *int*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex-interval* **where**

*of-int-complex-interval*  $x = \text{Complex-Interval } (\text{of-int-interval } x) \ 0$

**lemma** *of-int-complex-interval-0[simp]*: *of-int-complex-interval*  $0 = 0$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *of-int-complex-interval*: *of-int*  $i \in_c$  *of-int-complex-interval*  $i$

*<proof>*

**instantiation** *complex-interval* :: *mult-zero* **begin**

**fun** *times-complex-interval* **where**

$\text{Complex-Interval } rx \ ix * \text{Complex-Interval } ry \ iy =$   
 $\text{Complex-Interval } (rx * ry - ix * iy) (rx * iy + ix * ry)$

**instance**

*<proof>*

**end**

**instantiation** *complex-interval* :: *minus* **begin**

**fun** *minus-complex-interval* **where**

$\text{Complex-Interval } R \ I - \text{Complex-Interval } R' \ I' = \text{Complex-Interval } (R - R') (I - I')$

**instance**⟨proof⟩

**end**

**lemma** *times-complex-interval*:  $x \in_c X \implies y \in_c Y \implies x * y \in_c X * Y$   
⟨proof⟩

**definition** *ipoly-complex-interval* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex-interval*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex-interval*  
**where**

*ipoly-complex-interval*  $p$   $x = \text{fold-coeffs } (\lambda a \ b. \text{ of-int-complex-interval } a + x * b)$   
 $p \ 0$

**lemma** *ipoly-complex-interval-0*[*simp*]:  
*ipoly-complex-interval*  $0$   $x = 0$   
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ipoly-complex-interval-pCons*[*simp*]:  
*ipoly-complex-interval* ( $p\text{Cons } a \ p$ )  $x = \text{of-int-complex-interval } a + x * (\text{ipoly-complex-interval } p \ x)$   
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *ipoly-complex-interval*: **assumes**  $x: x \in_c X$   
**shows** *ipoly*  $p \ x \in_c \text{ipoly-complex-interval } p \ X$   
⟨proof⟩

**definition** *complex-interval-tendsto* (**infix**  $\longrightarrow_c$  55) **where**  
 $C \longrightarrow_c c \equiv ((\text{Re-interval} \circ C) \longrightarrow_i \text{Re } c) \wedge ((\text{Im-interval} \circ C) \longrightarrow_i \text{Im } c)$

**lemma** *complex-interval-tendstoI*[*intro!*]:  
 $(\text{Re-interval} \circ C) \longrightarrow_i \text{Re } c \implies (\text{Im-interval} \circ C) \longrightarrow_i \text{Im } c \implies C \longrightarrow_c c$   
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *of-int-complex-interval-tendsto*:  $(\lambda i. \text{ of-int-complex-interval } n) \longrightarrow_c \text{ of-int } n$   
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *Im-interval-plus*: *Im-interval*  $(A + B) = \text{Im-interval } A + \text{Im-interval } B$   
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *Re-interval-plus*: *Re-interval*  $(A + B) = \text{Re-interval } A + \text{Re-interval } B$   
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *Im-interval-minus*: *Im-interval*  $(A - B) = \text{Im-interval } A - \text{Im-interval } B$   
⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *Re-interval-minus*: *Re-interval*  $(A - B) = \text{Re-interval } A - \text{Re-interval } B$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *Re-interval-times*:  $Re\text{-interval } (A * B) = Re\text{-interval } A * Re\text{-interval } B - Im\text{-interval } A * Im\text{-interval } B$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *Im-interval-times*:  $Im\text{-interval } (A * B) = Re\text{-interval } A * Im\text{-interval } B + Im\text{-interval } A * Re\text{-interval } B$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *plus-complex-interval-tendsto*:

$A \longrightarrow_c a \implies B \longrightarrow_c b \implies (\lambda i. A\ i + B\ i) \longrightarrow_c a + b$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *minus-complex-interval-tendsto*:

$A \longrightarrow_c a \implies B \longrightarrow_c b \implies (\lambda i. A\ i - B\ i) \longrightarrow_c a - b$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *times-complex-interval-tendsto*:

$A \longrightarrow_c a \implies B \longrightarrow_c b \implies (\lambda i. A\ i * B\ i) \longrightarrow_c a * b$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *ipoly-complex-interval-tendsto*:

**assumes**  $C \longrightarrow_c c$

**shows**  $(\lambda i. ipoly\text{-complex-interval } p\ (C\ i)) \longrightarrow_c ipoly\ p\ c$

*<proof>*

**lemma** *complex-interval-tendsto-neq*: **assumes**  $(\lambda i. f\ i) \longrightarrow_c a$

**and**  $a \neq b$

**shows**  $\exists n. \neg b \in_c f\ n$

*<proof>*

**end**

## 13 Complex Algebraic Numbers

Since currently there is no immediate analog of Sturm's theorem for the complex numbers, we implement complex algebraic numbers via their real and imaginary part.

The major algorithm in this theory is a factorization algorithm which factors a rational polynomial over the complex numbers.

For factorization of polynomials with complex algebraic coefficients, there is a separate AFP entry "Factor-Algebraic-Polynomial".

**theory** *Complex-Algebraic-Numbers*

**imports**

*Real-Roots*

*Complex-Roots-Real-Poly*

*Compare-Complex*  
*Jordan-Normal-Form.Char-Poly*  
*Berlekamp-Zassenhaus.Code-Abort-Gcd*  
*Interval-Arithmetic*

**begin**

### 13.1 Complex Roots

**hide-const** (**open**) *UnivPoly.coeff*

**hide-const** (**open**) *Module.smult*

**hide-const** (**open**) *Coset.order*

**abbreviation** *complex-of-int-poly* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex poly* **where**  
*complex-of-int-poly*  $\equiv$  *map-poly of-int*

**abbreviation** *complex-of-rat-poly* :: *rat poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex poly* **where**  
*complex-of-rat-poly*  $\equiv$  *map-poly of-rat*

**lemma** *poly-complex-to-real*: (*poly (complex-of-int-poly p) (complex-of-real x) = 0*)  
 $=$  (*poly (real-of-int-poly p) x = 0*)  
 <proof>

**lemma** *represents-cnj*: **assumes** *p* *represents* *x* **shows** *p* *represents* (*cnj x*)  
 <proof>

**definition** *poly-2i* :: *int poly* **where**  
*poly-2i*  $\equiv$  [*4, 0, 1*:]

**lemma** *represents-2i*: *poly-2i* *represents* (*2 \* i*)  
 <proof>

**definition** *root-poly-Re* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly* **where**  
*root-poly-Re p* = *cf-pos-poly (poly-mult-rat (inverse 2) (poly-add p p))*

**lemma** *root-poly-Re-code*[code]:  
*root-poly-Re p* = (*let fs = coeffs (poly-add p p); k = length fs*  
*in cf-pos-poly (poly-of-list (map ( $\lambda$ (*f*, *i*). *f* \* 2<sup>*i*</sup>) (zip fs [0..*k*]))*)  
 <proof>

**definition** *root-poly-Im* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly list* **where**  
*root-poly-Im p* = (*let fs = factors-of-int-poly*  
*(poly-add p (poly-uminus p))*  
*in remdups ((if ( $\exists$  *f*  $\in$  set *fs*. *coeff f 0* = 0) then [[:0,1:]] else [])*) @  
 [ *cf-pos-poly (poly-div f poly-2i) . f*  $\leftarrow$  *fs*, *coeff f 0*  $\neq$  0])

**lemma** *represents-root-poly*:  
**assumes** *ipoly p x = 0* **and** *p*: *p*  $\neq$  0  
**shows** (*root-poly-Re p*) *represents* (*Re x*)

**and**  $\exists q \in \text{set } (\text{root-poly-Im } p)$ .  $q$  represents  $(\text{Im } x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{complex-poly} :: \text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{int poly} \Rightarrow \text{int poly list}$  **where**  
 $\text{complex-poly } re \text{ im} = (\text{let } i = [1, 0, 1:]$   
 $\text{in factors-of-int-poly } (\text{poly-add } re \text{ (poly-mult im i)})$ )

**lemma**  $\text{complex-poly}$ : **assumes**  $re$ :  $re$  represents  $(\text{Re } x)$   
**and**  $im$ :  $im$  represents  $(\text{Im } x)$   
**shows**  $\exists f \in \text{set } (\text{complex-poly } re \text{ im})$ .  $f$  represents  $x \wedge f$ .  $f \in \text{set } (\text{complex-poly } re \text{ im}) \Rightarrow \text{poly-cond } f$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{algebraic-complex-iff}$ :  $\text{algebraic } x = (\text{algebraic } (\text{Re } x) \wedge \text{algebraic } (\text{Im } x))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{algebraic-complex} :: \text{complex} \Rightarrow \text{bool}$  **where**  
 $[\text{simp}]$ :  $\text{algebraic-complex} = \text{algebraic}$

**lemma**  $\text{algebraic-complex-code-unfold}[\text{code-unfold}]$ :  $\text{algebraic} = \text{algebraic-complex}$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{algebraic-complex-code}[\text{code}]$ :  
 $\text{algebraic-complex } x = (\text{algebraic } (\text{Re } x) \wedge \text{algebraic } (\text{Im } x))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

Determine complex roots of a polynomial, intended for polynomials of degree 3 or higher, for lower degree polynomials use  $\text{roots1}$  or  $\text{roots2}$

**hide-const (open)**  $\text{eq}$

**primrec**  $\text{remdups-gen} :: ('a \Rightarrow 'a \Rightarrow \text{bool}) \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list} \Rightarrow 'a \text{ list}$  **where**  
 $\text{remdups-gen } \text{eq } [] = []$   
 $|\ \text{remdups-gen } \text{eq } (x \# xs) = (\text{if } (\exists y \in \text{set } xs. \text{eq } x y) \text{ then } \text{remdups-gen } \text{eq } xs \text{ else } x \# \text{remdups-gen } \text{eq } xs)$

**lemma**  $\text{real-of-3-remdups-equal-3}[\text{simp}]$ :  $\text{real-of-3 } ' \text{ set } (\text{remdups-gen equal-3 } xs) = \text{real-of-3 } ' \text{ set } xs$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{distinct-remdups-equal-3}$ :  $\text{distinct } (\text{map } \text{real-of-3 } (\text{remdups-gen equal-3 } xs))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma**  $\text{real-of-3-code} [\text{code}]$ :  $\text{real-of-3 } x = \text{real-of } (\text{Real-Alg-Quotient } x)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition**  $\text{real-parts-3 } p = \text{roots-of-3 } (\text{root-poly-Re } p)$

**definition** *pos-imaginary-parts-3*  $p =$   
 $\text{remdups-gen equal-3 } (\text{filter } (\lambda x. \text{sgn-3 } x = 1) (\text{concat } (\text{map roots-of-3 } (\text{root-poly-Im } p))))$

**lemma** *real-parts-3*: **assumes**  $p: p \neq 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } p \ x = 0$   
**shows**  $\text{Re } x \in \text{real-of-3 ' set } (\text{real-parts-3 } p)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *distinct-real-parts-3*:  $\text{distinct } (\text{map real-of-3 } (\text{real-parts-3 } p))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *pos-imaginary-parts-3*: **assumes**  $p: p \neq 0$  **and**  $\text{ipoly } p \ x = 0$  **and**  $\text{Im } x > 0$   
**shows**  $\text{Im } x \in \text{real-of-3 ' set } (\text{pos-imaginary-parts-3 } p)$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *distinct-pos-imaginary-parts-3*:  $\text{distinct } (\text{map real-of-3 } (\text{pos-imaginary-parts-3 } p))$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *remdups-gen-subset*:  $\text{set } (\text{remdups-gen eq } xs) \subseteq \text{set } xs$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *positive-pos-imaginary-parts-3*: **assumes**  $x \in \text{set } (\text{pos-imaginary-parts-3 } p)$   
**shows**  $0 < \text{real-of-3 } x$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**definition** *pair-to-complex*  $ri \equiv \text{case } ri \text{ of } (r,i) \Rightarrow \text{Complex } (\text{real-of-3 } r) (\text{real-of-3 } i)$

**fun** *get-itvl-2*  $:: \text{real-alg-2} \Rightarrow \text{real interval}$  **where**  
 $\text{get-itvl-2 } (\text{Irrational } n \ (p,l,r)) = \text{Interval } (\text{of-rat } l) (\text{of-rat } r)$   
 $|\ \text{get-itvl-2 } (\text{Rational } r) = (\text{let } rr = \text{of-rat } r \text{ in } \text{Interval } rr \ rr)$

**lemma** *get-bounds-2*: **assumes** *invariant-2*  $x$   
**shows**  $\text{real-of-2 } x \in_i \text{get-itvl-2 } x$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lift-definition** *get-itvl-3*  $:: \text{real-alg-3} \Rightarrow \text{real interval}$  **is** *get-itvl-2*  $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**lemma** *get-itvl-3*:  $\text{real-of-3 } x \in_i \text{get-itvl-3 } x$   
 $\langle \text{proof} \rangle$

**fun** *tighten-bounds-2*  $:: \text{real-alg-2} \Rightarrow \text{real-alg-2}$  **where**  
 $\text{tighten-bounds-2 } (\text{Irrational } n \ (p,l,r)) = (\text{case } \text{tighten-poly-bounds } p \ l \ r \ (\text{sgn } (\text{ipoly } p \ r))$   
 $\text{of } (l',r',-) \Rightarrow \text{Irrational } n \ (p,l',r'))$   
 $|\ \text{tighten-bounds-2 } (\text{Rational } r) = \text{Rational } r$

**lemma** *tighten-bounds-2*: **assumes** *inv*: *invariant-2 x*  
**shows** *real-of-2 (tighten-bounds-2 x) = real-of-2 x invariant-2 (tighten-bounds-2 x)*  
*get-itvl-2 x = Interval l r  $\implies$*   
*get-itvl-2 (tighten-bounds-2 x) = Interval l' r'  $\implies r' - l' = (r-l) / 2$*   
*<proof>*

**lift-definition** *tighten-bounds-3* :: *real-alg-3  $\Rightarrow$  real-alg-3* **is** *tighten-bounds-2*  
*<proof>*

**lemma** *tighten-bounds-3*:  
*real-of-3 (tighten-bounds-3 x) = real-of-3 x*  
*get-itvl-3 x = Interval l r  $\implies$*   
*get-itvl-3 (tighten-bounds-3 x) = Interval l' r'  $\implies r' - l' = (r-l) / 2$*   
*<proof>*

**partial-function** (*tailrec*) *filter-list-length*  
 :: (*'a  $\Rightarrow$  'a*)  $\Rightarrow$  (*'a  $\Rightarrow$  bool*)  $\Rightarrow$  *nat  $\Rightarrow$  'a list  $\Rightarrow$  'a list* **where**  
*[code]: filter-list-length f p n xs = (let ys = filter p xs*  
*in if length ys = n then ys else*  
*filter-list-length f p n (map f ys))*

**lemma** *filter-list-length*: **assumes** *length (filter P xs) = n*  
**and**  $\bigwedge i x. x \in \text{set } xs \implies P x \implies p ((f \hat{\sim} i) x)$   
**and**  $\bigwedge x. x \in \text{set } xs \implies \neg P x \implies \exists i. \neg p ((f \hat{\sim} i) x)$   
**and** *g*:  $\bigwedge x. g (f x) = g x$   
**and** *P*:  $\bigwedge x. P (f x) = P x$   
**shows** *map g (filter-list-length f p n xs) = map g (filter P xs)*  
*<proof>*

**definition** *complex-roots-of-int-poly3* :: *int poly  $\Rightarrow$  complex list* **where**  
*complex-roots-of-int-poly3 p  $\equiv$  let n = degree p;*  
*rrts = real-roots-of-int-poly p;*  
*nr = length rrts;*  
*crts = map ( $\lambda r. \text{Complex } r 0$ ) rrts*  
*in*  
*if n = nr then crts*  
*else let nr-crts = n - nr in if nr-crts = 2 then*  
*let pp = real-of-int-poly p div (prod-list (map ( $\lambda x. [-x, 1:]$ ) rrts));*  
*cpp = map-poly ( $\lambda r. \text{Complex } r 0$ ) pp*  
*in crts @ roots2 cpp else*  
*let*  
*nr-pos-crts = nr-crts div 2;*  
*rxs = real-parts-3 p;*  
*ixs = pos-imaginary-parts-3 p;*  
*rts = [(rx, ix). rx <- rxs, ix <- ixs];*  
*crts' = map pair-to-complex*



(filter-list-length (map-prod tighten-bounds-3 tighten-bounds-3)  
 (λ (r, i). 0 ∈<sub>c</sub> ipoly-complex-interval p (Complex-Interval (get-itvl-3 r)  
 (get-itvl-3 i))) nr-pos-crts rts)  
 in crts @ (concat (map (λ x. [x, conj x]) crts'))

**definition** complex-roots-of-int-poly-all :: int poly ⇒ complex list **where**  
 complex-roots-of-int-poly-all p = (let n = degree p in  
 if n ≥ 3 then complex-roots-of-int-poly3 p  
 else if n = 1 then [roots1 (map-poly of-int p)] else if n = 2 then roots2 (map-poly  
 of-int p)  
 else [])

**lemma** in-real-itvl-get-bounds-tighten: real-of-3 x ∈<sub>i</sub> get-itvl-3 ((tighten-bounds-3  
 ~ n) x)  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** sandwich-real:  
**fixes** l r :: nat ⇒ real  
**assumes** la: l → a **and** ra: r → a  
**and** lm: ∧i. l i ≤ m i **and** mr: ∧i. m i ≤ r i  
**shows** m → a  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** real-of-tighten-bounds-many[simp]: real-of-3 ((tighten-bounds-3 ~ i) x) =  
 real-of-3 x  
 ⟨proof⟩

**definition** lower-3 **where** lower-3 x i ≡ interval.lower (get-itvl-3 ((tighten-bounds-3  
 ~ i) x))

**definition** upper-3 **where** upper-3 x i ≡ interval.upper (get-itvl-3 ((tighten-bounds-3  
 ~ i) x))

**lemma** interval-size-3: upper-3 x i - lower-3 x i = (upper-3 x 0 - lower-3 x  
 0) / 2<sup>i</sup>  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** interval-size-3-tendsto-0: (λi. (upper-3 x i - lower-3 x i)) → 0  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** dist-tendsto-0-imp-tendsto: (λi. |f i - a| :: real) → 0 ⇒ f → a  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** upper-3-tendsto: upper-3 x → real-of-3 x  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** lower-3-tendsto: lower-3 x → real-of-3 x  
 ⟨proof⟩

**lemma** *tends-to-tight-bounds-3*:  $(\lambda x. \text{get-itvl-3 } ((\text{tighten-bounds-3 } \widehat{\sim} x) y)) \longrightarrow_i$   
*real-of-3*  $y$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *complex-roots-of-int-poly3*: **assumes**  $p: p \neq 0$  **and** *sf*: *square-free*  $p$   
**shows**  $\text{set } (\text{complex-roots-of-int-poly3 } p) = \{x. \text{ipoly } p \ x = 0\}$  (**is**  $?l = ?r$ )  
*distinct*  $(\text{complex-roots-of-int-poly3 } p)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *complex-roots-of-int-poly-all*: **assumes** *sf*: *degree*  $p \geq 3 \implies$  *square-free*  $p$   
**shows**  $p \neq 0 \implies \text{set } (\text{complex-roots-of-int-poly-all } p) = \{x. \text{ipoly } p \ x = 0\}$  (**is**  $- \implies \text{set } ?l = ?r$ )  
**and** *distinct*  $(\text{complex-roots-of-int-poly-all } p)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

It now comes the preferred function to compute complex roots of an integer polynomial.

**definition** *complex-roots-of-int-poly* :: *int poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex list* **where**  
*complex-roots-of-int-poly*  $p =$  (  
*let*  $ps =$  (*if degree*  $p \geq 3$  *then factors-of-int-poly*  $p$  *else*  $[p]$ )  
*in concat*  $(\text{map } \text{complex-roots-of-int-poly-all } ps)$ )

**definition** *complex-roots-of-rat-poly* :: *rat poly*  $\Rightarrow$  *complex list* **where**  
*complex-roots-of-rat-poly*  $p = \text{complex-roots-of-int-poly } (\text{snd } (\text{rat-to-int-poly } p))$

**lemma** *complex-roots-of-int-poly*:  
**shows**  $p \neq 0 \implies \text{set } (\text{complex-roots-of-int-poly } p) = \{x. \text{ipoly } p \ x = 0\}$  (**is**  $- \implies ?l = ?r$ )  
**and** *distinct*  $(\text{complex-roots-of-int-poly } p)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *complex-roots-of-rat-poly*:  
 $p \neq 0 \implies \text{set } (\text{complex-roots-of-rat-poly } p) = \{x. \text{rpoly } p \ x = 0\}$  (**is**  $- \implies ?l = ?r$ )  
*distinct*  $(\text{complex-roots-of-rat-poly } p)$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

**lemma** *min-int-poly-complex-of-real[simp]*: *min-int-poly*  $(\text{complex-of-real } x) = \text{min-int-poly}$   
 $x$   
 ⟨*proof*⟩

TODO: the implementation might be tuned, since the search process should be faster when using interval arithmetic to figure out the correct factor. (One might also implement the search via checking  $\text{ipoly } f \ x = (0::'a)$ , but because of complex-algebraic-number arithmetic, I think that search would be slower than the current one via  $x \in \text{set } (\text{complex-roots-of-int-poly } f)$

**definition** *min-int-poly-complex* :: *complex*  $\Rightarrow$  *int poly* **where**

```

    min-int-poly-complex x = (if algebraic x then if Im x = 0 then min-int-poly-real
(Re x)
    else the (find (λ f. x ∈ set (complex-roots-of-int-poly f)) (complex-poly (min-int-poly
(Re x) (min-int-poly (Im x))))
    else [:0,1:])

```

```

lemma min-int-poly-complex[code-unfold]: min-int-poly = min-int-poly-complex
⟨proof⟩

```

**end**

## 14 Show for Real Algebraic Numbers – Interface

We just demand that there is some function from real algebraic numbers to string and register this as show-function and use it to implement *show-real*.

Implementations for real algebraic numbers are available in one of the theories *Show-Real-Precise* and *Show-Real-Approx*.

```

theory Show-Real-Alg

```

```

imports

```

```

    Real-Algebraic-Numbers

```

```

    Show.Show-Real

```

```

begin

```

```

consts show-real-alg :: real-alg ⇒ string

```

```

definition showsp-real-alg :: real-alg showsp where

```

```

    showsp-real-alg p x y = (show-real-alg x @ y)

```

```

lemma show-law-real-alg [show-law-intros]:

```

```

    show-law showsp-real-alg r

```

```

    ⟨proof⟩

```

```

lemma showsp-real-alg-append [show-law-simps]:

```

```

    showsp-real-alg p r (x @ y) = showsp-real-alg p r x @ y

```

```

    ⟨proof⟩

```

```

⟨ML⟩

```

```

derive show real-alg

```

We now define *show-real*.

```

overloading show-real ≡ show-real

```

```

begin

```

```

    definition show-real ≡ show-real-alg o real-alg-of-real

```

```

end

```

```

end

```

## 15 Show for Real (Algebraic) Numbers – Approximate Representation

We implement the show-function for real (algebraic) numbers by calculating the number precisely for three digits after the comma.

```

theory Show-Real-Approx
imports
  Show-Real-Alg
  Show.Show-Instances
begin

overloading show-real-alg  $\equiv$  show-real-alg
begin

definition show-real-alg[code]: show-real-alg x  $\equiv$  let
  x1000' = floor (1000 * x);
  (x1000,s) = (if x1000' < 0 then (-x1000', "-" else (x1000', ""));
  (bef,aft) = divmod-int x1000 1000;
  a' = show aft;
  a = replicate (3-length a') (CHR "0") @ a'
  in
  "~" @ s @ show bef @ "." @ a

end

end

```

## 16 Show for Real (Algebraic) Numbers – Unique Representation

We implement the show-function for real (algebraic) numbers by printing them uniquely via their monic irreducible polynomial with a special cases for polynomials of degree at most 2.

```

theory Show-Real-Precise
imports
  Show-Real-Alg
  Show.Show-Instances
begin

datatype real-alg-show-info = Rat-Info rat | Sqrt-Info rat rat | Real-Alg-Info int
  poly nat

fun convert-info :: rat + int poly  $\times$  nat  $\Rightarrow$  real-alg-show-info where
  convert-info (Inl q) = Rat-Info q
| convert-info (Inr (f,n)) = (if degree f = 2 then (let a = coeff f 2; b = coeff f 1;
c = coeff f 0;

```

```

    b2a = Rat.Fract (-b) (2 * a);
    below = Rat.Fract (b*b - 4 * a * c) (4 * a * a)
    in Sqrt-Info b2a (if n = 1 then -below else below)
    else Real-Alg-Info f n)

```

**definition** *real-alg-show-info* :: *real-alg*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-show-info* **where**  
*real-alg-show-info* *x* = *convert-info* (*info-real-alg* *x*)

We prove that the extracted information for showing an algebraic real number is correct.

**lemma** *real-alg-show-info*: *real-alg-show-info* *x* = *Rat-Info* *r*  $\implies$  *real-of* *x* = *of-rat* *r*

```

    real-alg-show-info x = Sqrt-Info r sq  $\implies$  real-of x = of-rat r + sqrt (of-rat sq)
    real-alg-show-info x = Real-Alg-Info p n  $\implies$  p represents (real-of x)  $\wedge$  n = card
    {y. y  $\leq$  real-of x  $\wedge$  ipoly p y = 0}
    (is ?l  $\implies$  ?r)
    <proof>

```

**fun** *show-rai-info* :: *int*  $\Rightarrow$  *real-alg-show-info*  $\Rightarrow$  *string* **where**

```

    show-rai-info fl (Rat-Info r) = show r
  | show-rai-info fl (Sqrt-Info r sq) = (let sqrt = "sqrt(" @ show (abs sq) @ ")"
    in if r = 0 then (if sq < 0 then " -" else []) @ sqrt
    else ("(" @ show r @ (if sq < 0 then " -" else "+") @ sqrt @ "))")
  | show-rai-info fl (Real-Alg-Info p n) =
    "(root #" @ show n @ " of " @ show p @ ", in (" @ show fl @ ", " @ show (fl
    + 1) @ ")")"

```

**overloading** *show-real-alg*  $\equiv$  *show-real-alg*

**begin**

**definition** *show-real-alg*[*code*]:

```

    show-real-alg x  $\equiv$  show-rai-info (floor x) (real-alg-show-info x)

```

**end**

**end**

## 17 Algebraic Number Tests

We provide a sequence of examples which demonstrate what can be done with the implementation of algebraic numbers.

**theory** *Algebraic-Number-Tests*

**imports**

```

    Jordan-Normal-Form.Char-Poly
    Jordan-Normal-Form.Determinant-Impl
    Show.Show-Complex
    HOL-Library.Code-Target-Nat
    HOL-Library.Code-Target-Int
    Berlekamp-Zassenhaus.Factorize-Rat-Poly
    Complex-Algebraic-Numbers
    Show-Real-Precise

```

begin

## 17.1 Stand-Alone Examples

**abbreviation**  $(input) \text{ show-lines } x \equiv \text{shows-lines } x \text{ Nil}$

**fun**  $\text{show-factorization} :: 'a :: \{\text{semiring-1}, \text{show}\} \times (('a \text{ poly} \times \text{nat})\text{list}) \Rightarrow \text{string}$   
**where**  
   $\text{show-factorization } (c, []) = \text{show } c$   
   $| \text{show-factorization } (c, ((p, i) \# ps)) = \text{show-factorization } (c, ps) @ " * (" @ \text{show}$   
   $p @ ") " @$   
   $(\text{if } i = 1 \text{ then } [] \text{ else } "\wedge" @ \text{show } i)$

**definition**  $\text{show-sf-factorization} :: 'a :: \{\text{semiring-1}, \text{show}\} \times (('a \text{ poly} \times \text{nat})\text{list})$   
 $\Rightarrow \text{string}$  **where**  
   $\text{show-sf-factorization } x = \text{show-factorization } (\text{map-prod id } (\text{map } (\text{map-prod id } \text{Suc})) x)$

Determine the roots over the rational, real, and complex numbers.

**definition**  $\text{testpoly} = [5/2, -7/2, 1/2, -5, 7, -1, 5/2, -7/2, 1/2:]$

**definition**  $\text{test} = \text{show-lines } (\text{real-roots-of-rat-poly } \text{testpoly})$

**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show-lines } (\text{roots-of-rat-poly } \text{testpoly})$   
**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show-lines } (\text{real-roots-of-rat-poly } \text{testpoly})$   
**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show-lines } (\text{complex-roots-of-rat-poly } \text{testpoly})$

Compute real and complex roots of a polynomial with rational coefficients.

**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show } (\text{complex-roots-of-rat-poly } \text{testpoly})$   
**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show } (\text{real-roots-of-rat-poly } \text{testpoly})$

A sequence of calculations.

**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show } (- \text{sqrt } 2 - \text{sqrt } 3)$   
**lemma**  $\text{root } 3 \ 4 > \text{sqrt } (\text{root } 4 \ 3) + [1/10 * \text{root } 3 \ 7] \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**lemma**  $\text{csqrt } (4 + 3 * i) \notin \mathbf{R} \langle \text{proof} \rangle$   
**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show } (\text{csqrt } (4 + 3 * i))$   
**value**  $[\text{code}] \text{show } (\text{csqrt } (1 + i))$

## 17.2 Example Application: Compute Norms of Eigenvalues

For complexity analysis of some matrix  $A$  it is important to compute the spectral radius of a matrix, i.e., the maximal norm of all complex eigenvalues, since the spectral radius determines the growth rates of matrix-powers  $A^n$ , cf. [4] for a formalized statement of this fact.

**definition**  $\text{eigenvalues} :: \text{rat mat} \Rightarrow \text{complex list}$  **where**  
   $\text{eigenvalues } A = \text{complex-roots-of-rat-poly } (\text{char-poly } A)$

```

definition testmat = mat-of-rows-list 3 [
  [1,-4,2],
  [1/5,7,9],
  [7,1,5 :: rat]
]

```

```

definition spectral-radius-test = show (Max (set [ norm ev. ev ← eigenvalues
testmat]))

```

```

value [code] char-poly testmat

```

```

value [code] spectral-radius-test

```

```

end

```

## 18 Explicit Constants for External Code

```

theory Algebraic-Numbers-External-Code

```

```

imports Algebraic-Number-Tests

```

```

begin

```

We define constants for most operations on real- and complex- algebraic numbers, so that they are easily accessible in target languages. In particular, we use target languages integers, pairs of integers, strings, and integer lists, resp., in order to represent the Isabelle types *int/nat*, *rat*, *string*, and *int poly*, resp.

```

definition decompose-rat = map-prod integer-of-int integer-of-int o quotient-of

```

### 18.1 Operations on Real Algebraic Numbers

```

definition zero-ra = (0 :: real-alg)

```

```

definition one-ra = (1 :: real-alg)

```

```

definition of-integer-ra = (of-int o int-of-integer :: integer ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition of-rational-ra = ((λ (num, denom). of-rat-real-alg (Rat.Fract (int-of-integer
num) (int-of-integer denom)))

```

```

:: integer × integer ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition plus-ra = ((+) :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition minus-ra = ((-) :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition uminus-ra = (uminus :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition times-ra = ((* :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition divide-ra = ((/) :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition inverse-ra = (inverse :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition abs-ra = (abs :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition floor-ra = (integer-of-int o floor :: real-alg ⇒ integer)

```

```

definition ceiling-ra = (integer-of-int o ceiling :: real-alg ⇒ integer)

```

```

definition minimum-ra = (min :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition maximum-ra = (max :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ real-alg)

```

```

definition equals-ra = ((=) :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ bool)

```

```

definition less-ra = ((<) :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ bool)

```

```

definition less-equal-ra = ((≤) :: real-alg ⇒ real-alg ⇒ bool)

```

**definition** *compare-ra* = (*compare* :: *real-alg* ⇒ *real-alg* ⇒ *order*)  
**definition** *roots-of-poly-ra* = (*roots-of-real-alg* o *poly-of-list* o *map int-of-integer* :: *integer list* ⇒ *real-alg list*)  
**definition** *root-ra* = (*root-real-alg* o *nat-of-integer* :: *integer* ⇒ *real-alg* ⇒ *real-alg*)

**definition** *show-ra* = ((*String.implode* o *show*) :: *real-alg* ⇒ *String.literal*)  
**definition** *is-rational-ra* = (*is-rat-real-alg* :: *real-alg* ⇒ *bool*)  
**definition** *to-rational-ra* = (*decompose-rat* o *to-rat-real-alg* :: *real-alg* ⇒ *integer* × *integer*)  
**definition** *sign-ra* = (*fst* o *to-rational-ra* o *sgn* :: *real-alg* ⇒ *integer*)  
**definition** *decompose-ra* = (*map-sum* *decompose-rat* (*map-prod* (*map integer-of-int* o *coeffs*) *integer-of-nat*) o *info-real-alg* :: *real-alg* ⇒ *integer* × *integer* + *integer list* × *integer*)

## 18.2 Operations on Complex Algebraic Numbers

**definition** *zero-ca* = (*0* :: *complex*)  
**definition** *one-ca* = (*1* :: *complex*)  
**definition** *imag-unit-ca* = (*i* :: *complex*)  
**definition** *of-integer-ca* = (*of-int* o *int-of-integer* :: *integer* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *of-rational-ca* = ((λ (*num*, *denom*). *of-rat* (*Rat.Fract* (*int-of-integer num*) (*int-of-integer denom*))) :: *integer* × *integer* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *of-real-imag-ca* = ((λ (*real*, *imag*). *Complex* (*real-of-real*) (*real-of-imag*)) :: *real-alg* × *real-alg* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *plus-ca* = ((+) :: *complex* ⇒ *complex* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *minus-ca* = ((-) :: *complex* ⇒ *complex* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *uminus-ca* = (*uminus* :: *complex* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *times-ca* = ((\*) :: *complex* ⇒ *complex* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *divide-ca* = ((/) :: *complex* ⇒ *complex* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *inverse-ca* = (*inverse* :: *complex* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *equals-ca* = ((=) :: *complex* ⇒ *complex* ⇒ *bool*)  
**definition** *roots-of-poly-ca* = (*complex-roots-of-int-poly* o *poly-of-list* o *map int-of-integer* :: *integer list* ⇒ *complex list*)  
**definition** *csqrt-ca* = (*csqrt* :: *complex* ⇒ *complex*)  
**definition** *show-ca* = ((*String.implode* o *show*) :: *complex* ⇒ *String.literal*)  
**definition** *real-of-ca* = (*real-alg-of-real* o *Re* :: *complex* ⇒ *real-alg*)  
**definition** *imag-of-ca* = (*real-alg-of-real* o *Im* :: *complex* ⇒ *real-alg*)

## 18.3 Export Constants in Haskell

### export-code

*order.Eq order.Lt order.Gt* — for comparison  
*Inl Inr* — make disjoint sums available for decomposition information

*zero-ra*  
*one-ra*  
*of-integer-ra*



*of-rational-ra*  
*plus-ra*  
*minus-ra*  
*uminus-ra*  
*times-ra*  
*divide-ra*  
*inverse-ra*  
*abs-ra*  
*floor-ra*  
*ceiling-ra*  
*minimum-ra*  
*maximum-ra*  
*equals-ra*  
*less-ra*  
*less-equal-ra*  
*compare-ra*  
*roots-of-poly-ra*  
*root-ra*  
*show-ra*  
*is-rational-ra*  
*to-rational-ra*  
*sign-ra*  
*decompose-ra*

*zero-ca*  
*one-ca*  
*imag-unit-ca*  
*of-integer-ca*  
*of-rational-ca*  
*of-real-imag-ca*  
*plus-ca*  
*minus-ca*  
*uminus-ca*  
*times-ca*  
*divide-ca*  
*inverse-ca*  
*equals-ca*  
*roots-of-poly-ca*  
*csqrt-ca*  
*show-ca*  
*real-of-ca*  
*imag-of-ca*

**in** *Haskell* **module-name** *Algebraic-Numbers*

**end**

## References

- [1] M. Eberl. A decision procedure for univariate real polynomials in Isabelle/HOL. In *Proc. CPP 2015*, pages 75–83. ACM, 2015.
- [2] B. Mishra. *Algorithmic Algebra*. Texts and Monographs in Computer Science. Springer, 1993.
- [3] R. Thiemann. Implementing field extensions of the form  $\mathbb{Q}[\sqrt{b}]$ . *Archive of Formal Proofs*, 2014, 2014.
- [4] R. Thiemann and A. Yamada. Matrices, Jordan normal forms, and spectral radius theory. *Archive of Formal Proofs*, 2015, 2015.